HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array 3000/5000 user guide (VCS 3.110)

This user guide contains conceptual and procedural information about the HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array and its online interface.



Legal and notice information

© Copyright 2003-2007 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Hewlett-Packard Company makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

This document contains proprietary information, which is protected by copyright. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated into another language without the prior written consent of Hewlett-Packard. The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

Compaq Computer Corporation is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Windows®, Windows NT® and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Hewlett-Packard Company shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein. The information is provided "as is" without warranty of any kind and is subject to change without notice. The warranties for Hewlett-Packard Company products are set forth in the express limited warranty statements for such products. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty.

Contents

About this guide																. 13
Overview																
Intended audience																
Related documentation	• •	• • •	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	• •	
Document conventions																
Text symbols																
Equipment symbols																
Rack stability																
Getting help																
HP technical support																
HP storage website																
HP authorized reseller	• •		• •	·	•••	• •	• •	•	•••	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•••	. 16
1 System description																. 17
Key features and benefits																
Virtualization																
Storage system components																
Command View EVA																
Interface layout																
Command View EVA online help																
Virtual controller software																
VCS benefits	• •	• • •	• •	·	•••	• •	• •	•	•••	• •	•	• •	•	• •	• •	
VCS features and functionality .	• •	• • •	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	• •	
Optional software licensing	• •	• • •	• •	·	•••	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •		
Hardware																
Physical layout of the storage sys																
Fibre Channel drive enclosure .																
Fibre Channel loop switches	• •	• • •	• •	·	•••	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •		
EVA5000 HSV110 controllers																
EVA3000 HSV100 controllers .																
Rack																
Hosts and the Enterprise Virtual Array																
SAN considerations	• •		• •	·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •		. 29
2 Startup and operation																. 31
EVA5000 storage system connections																
EVA3000 storage system connections																
Procedures for getting started																
Gathering Information																
Additional documentation																
Failback Preference Setting for HSV c	 ontrol	 Iors	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	• •	
Changing virtual disk failover/failbac																
Obtaining a license key																
Business Copy EVA																
Continuous Access EVA																
Setting up the storage system hardwo																
Entering data using the OCP				•				•			•		•			. 37

Installing Command View EVA	9 OC 	CP .	· ·	•	 	•	· ·	•	· ·	•	· ·	•	•	· ·	•	•	· ·	•	37 40
Installing Optional EVA Sottware Licenses	s.																	•	40
System shutdown and power up	• •	•	• •	·	•••	•	•••	•	• •	•		·	·	• •	•	·		•	49
3 Enterprise Virtual Array operation																			45
		•		•		•		•	• •	•		•	•		•	•		•	45
Operating tips and information Reserving adequate free space																			45 45
Using FATA disk drives	• •	•	•••	•	• •	·	• •	•	• •	•	•••	•	•	• •	•	·	• •	•	45
Failback preference setting for HSV controllers	· · 5 .			•	•••	•	•••	:	· ·	:		•	•	•••	•			•	45
Changing virtual disk failover/failback se	ettin	a .																	48
Storage system shutdown and powerup																			49
Shutting down the storage system																			49
Powering up the storage system		•						•		•		•						•	49
Saving storage system configuration data .	• •	•	• •	•		•		•		•	• •	•	•		•	•	• •	•	50
Adding disk drives to the storage system .	• •	•	• •	•		·		•	• •	•		•	•	• •	·	·	• •	•	52
Guidelines for adding disk drives																			52 53
Creating disk groups																			53 54
Adding a disk drive	• •	•	• •	·	• •	·	• •	·	• •	·	•••	•	·	• •	•	·	• •	•	54 54
Removing the drive blank Changing the Device Addition Policy	 ,	•	• •	·	• •	·	• •	·	• •	·	• •	•	·	• •	·	·	• •	•	55
Installing the disk drive		•	• •	•	•••	·	•••	•	• •	•	•••	•	•	• •	•	·	• •	•	55
Checking status indicators	• •	•	•••	•	•••	·	•••	•	• •	•	•••	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	55
Adding the disk to a disk group	· ·	•	•••	•	•••	•	•••	•				•	•			•	•••	•	56
Handling fiber optic cables																			56
5 1																			
4 Storage system hardware compon	en	ts																:	59
Fibre Channel drive enclosures																			59
Enclosure layout		•						•		•		•						•	59
FC-AL I/O modules		•		•		·		•		•		•	•		•	•		•	60
I/O module status displays	• •	•	• •	·	• •	·	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	• •	•	·	• •	•	62
I/O module power																			63 64
Fiber optic cables															•				64 64
Copper Fibre Channel cables		•						•											65
Fibro Channol disk drivos																			00
Fibre Channel disk drives																•		•	
Drive status reporting			 		 				 		 	•		 	•		· ·	•	66
Drive status reporting	 	•	 	•	 	•	 	•	 		 			 			· ·	•	66 66
Drive status reporting	 	• •	 		 	•	 		· · ·		 			 			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	66 66 67
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank	· · · · · ·	• •	 		 		 		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	66 66
Drive status reporting	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • •	· · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • •	· · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	66 66 67 67 68 68
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank . Power and cooling components Enclosure power	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	66 67 67 68 68 69
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank . Power and cooling components Enclosure power Temperature sensing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	66 67 67 68 68 69 69
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank . Power and cooling components Enclosure power Temperature sensing Blowers	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 68 69 69
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank . Power and cooling components Enclosure power Temperature sensing Blowers	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 68 69 69 69 70
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank . Power and cooling components Enclosure power Temperature sensing Blowers Drive enclosure EMU Controls and displays	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 68 69 69 70 71
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72 72
Drive status reporting	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · ·		· · · · · ·		· · · · · ·		· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 66 67 68 68 69 69 69 69 70 71 72 72 73
Drive status reporting	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · ·		· · · · · ·		· · · · · ·		· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 66 67 67 68 68 69 69 70 71 72 72 73 73
Drive status reporting	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 66 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72 73 73 73 75
Drive status reporting	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72 72 73 73 75 77
Drive status reporting	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 69 69 70 71 72 72 73 73 75 77 77
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Drive blank	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		666 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72 73 73 75 77 77 78
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank Power and cooling components Enclosure power Temperature sensing Blowers Drive enclosure EMU Controls and displays EMU functions EMU functions EMU displays EMU displays EMU LED displays Using the alphanumeric display EMU push-button LEDs Audible alarm operations Audible alarm operations	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		66 67 67 68 69 69 70 71 72 72 73 73 75 77 77
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Drive blank	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·											· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		666 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72 73 73 75 77 77 78 78
Drive status reporting Drive status displays Drive power Drive blank Drive blank Replacing a disk or drive blank Power and cooling components Enclosure power Temperature sensing Blowers Drive enclosure EMU Controls and displays EMU functions EMU functions EMU bush displays EMU leD displays EMU LED displays EMU push-button LEDs Audible alarm operations Audible alarm operations Muting or unmuting the audible alarm	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·											· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			666 67 67 68 69 69 69 70 71 72 73 73 75 77 77 78 78 79

	Navigating the error display												•						. 87
	Viewing the reporting group fee	ature																	. 88
	Verifying enclosure operation																		. 89
	Status monitoring and display																		. 90
	Enclosure status icons																		. 90
Fibr	e Channel loop switches																		
	Power-on self test																		. 91
	Reading the switch LEDs																		
	Problem isolation																		
HS∖	controllers																		
	High availability features																		
	Operator control panel																		
	LEDs																		
	Navigation push-buttons																		
	Displaying the storage system m	nenu tr	ee .	• •	•	•••			•		•	• •	•		•	•	•	•	
	Displaying system information																		
	Displaying Versions system info	matio	 n	• •	•	•••	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	•	•	•	
	Shutting down the system	mane		•••	•	•••	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	•	
	Shutting the controller down usi	na the		 mer		• •	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	·	•	•	
	Restarting the system	ing inc		mer	10	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	• •	•	•	•	•	. 100
	Powering off the system		• •	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	·	• •	·	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	•	
	Uninitializing the system																		
	Password options	• • •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	• •	·	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	·	
	Changing a password	• • •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	• •	·	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	·	
	Clearing a password	 		• •	·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	•	
	Setting up a controller pair usin HSV controller cabling	g ine v	OCr	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	•	
Dava																			
Rac																			
	Rack configurations																		
	Power distribution																		
	PDUs																		
			• •	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	·	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	·	
	Rack AC power distribution .		•••		·	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	•	. 111
	Rack System/E power distribution																		
	Moving and stabilizing a rack	•••	• •	• •	·	• •	• •	• •	·	• •	•	• •	·	• •	•	·	·	•	. 112
A Req	ulatory notices and specific	catic	ons																115
A Reg	ulatory notices and specific	catic	ons	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		. 115
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices and specific ulatory notices	catic n (FCC	o <mark>ns</mark> C) no	 tice	•	•	•	• •			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 115 . 115 . 115
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	 n (FCC	 C) no	 tice	•	· ·	· ·	•••	•	•••	•	· · · ·	•	•••	•	•	·		. 115
A Reg Reg	Idatory notices	 n (FCC	 C) no 	 tice		 	· · · ·	· · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · ·		· · · ·	• • •		·		. 115 . 115 . 115
A Reg Reg	Idatory notices	 n (FCC 	 C) no 	ice	• • •	· · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • •	· · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					. 115 . 115 . 115 . 115
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	 n (FCC 	 C) no 	tice	• • • •	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • •	· · · · · ·		· · · · · · · ·		• • •	• • •		. 115 . 115 . 115 . 115 . 116
A Reg Reg	Idatory notices	 n (FCC oducts	 C) no 	tice	· · · vitł	· · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · ·	go,	· · · · · · · · · Uni	ted	 	les	 only	· · · · ·				. 115 . 115 . 115 . 115 . 116 . 116
A Reg Reg	Idatory notices	 n (FCC oducts 	 C) no 	tice	· · · with	· · · · · · · · · · the	· · · · · · · · · · · · • FC(go,	 Uni	· · · ted	 Stat	tes	 only	· · · · · ·			• • • •	. 115 . 115 . 115 . 115 . 116 . 116 . 116
A Reg Reg	Idatory notices	 n (FCC oducts 	 C) no 	tice	· · · witł	 n the 	· · · · · · · · · · · · • FC(go,	 Uni 	· · ted	 Sta	tes	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · ·				. 115 . 115 . 115 . 115 . 116 . 116 . 116 . 116
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	 n (FCC oducts 	 C) no 	tice ked	witł	 	· · · · · · · · · · · · • FC(· · ·	 	go,	 Uni 	ted	 	tes	 only 	· · · · · · ·				. 115 . 115 . 115 . 115 . 116 . 116 . 116 . 116 . 116
A Reg Reg	Ulatory notices	 n (FCC oducts 	 C) no 	tice	witł	 	• • • • • • • • • • FC(• • • •	 	go,	 Uni 	ted	 		 	· · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	 n (FCC oducts 	 C) no 	tice	· · · · · · · ·	 	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	 	go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ted	 Stat	tes	· · · · · · only · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	n (FCC oducts ions nation	 C) no 	tice ked 	with	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	C log	go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ted	 	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117 · 117
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	n (FCC oducts ions nation	 C) no 	tice ked 	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	 	go,	· · · · · ·	ted	 Star 	tes	 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	 n (FCC oducts ions nation	C) no 	tice ked 	· · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	 		· · · · · ·	ted	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117
A Reg Reg	 ulatory notices Federal Communications Commissio FCC Class A certification Class A equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment Declaration of conformity for pr Modifications Cables Laser device Laser device Laser safety warnings Compliance with CDRH regulat Certification and classification inforr Canadien notice (avis Canadien) Class B equipment Class B equipment 	 n (FCC oducts ions nation 	C) no 	tice ked 		 	FC0		go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ted	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117
A Reg Reg	 ulatory notices Federal Communications Commissio FCC Class A certification Class A equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment Cables Laser device Laser device Laser safety warnings Compliance with CDRH regulat Certification and classification inforr Canadien notice (avis Canadien) Class B equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment 	n (FCC	C) no 		· · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· . • . • ted	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices Federal Communications Commissio Federal Communications Commissio FCC Class A certification Class A equipment Class B equipment Declaration of conformity for pr Modifications Cables Laser device Laser safety warnings Compliance with CDRH regulat Certification and classification inforr Canadien notice (avis Canadien) Class B equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment	n (FCC	 C) no 		· · · · · · · · ·	 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	C lo	go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••••••••••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118
A Reg Reg	 ulatory notices Federal Communications Commissio FCC Class A certification Class A equipment Class B equipment Class B equipment Declaration of conformity for pr Modifications Cables Laser device Laser device Laser safety warnings Compliance with CDRH regulat Certification and classification inforr Canadien notice (avis Canadien) Class B equipment Weter France Weter Recycling Notices 	n (FCC		ked	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	C lo 		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ted	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	n (FCC		ked	· · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	C lo 	go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	n (FCC		tice 	with	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	C lo 	go,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ted		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	••••••••••••••••		· 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 115 · 116 · 117 · 118 · 118 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 118 · 118 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 118
A Reg Reg	ulatory notices	n (FCC		tice 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Star Star 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 117 · 118 · 119 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 115 · 116 · 117 · 118 · 118

Finnish notice							
French notice							. 119
German notice							. 119
Greek notice							. 119
Hungarian notice							. 120
Italian notice							120
Latvian notice							120
Lithuanian notice							120
Polish notice							121
Portuguese notice							121
Slovakian notice					•••	• •	101
Slovenian notice							
Spanish notice							
Swedish notice						• •	122
					•••	• •	122
					• •	• •	122
Japanese notice	• •	• •	• •	•	•••	• •	
Harmonics conformance (Japan)	• •	• •	• •	•	•••	• •	123
Taiwanese notice	• •	• •	• •	•	• •	• •	
Japanese power cord notice	• •	• •	• •	•		• •	. 123
Country-specific certifications	• •	• •	• •	•		• •	. 123
About countryspecific regulations						• •	. 124
Japanese cord caution statement	• •	• •	• •	•	• •		124
Fibre Channel drive enclosure specifications	• •	• •		•			124
Physical specifications							. 124
Environmental specifications							. 126
Power specifications							. 127
Fibre Channel switch specifications							. 129
Controller specifications							129
Physical specifications							129
Power specifications							129
Environmental specifications							130
Environmental specifications						• •	. 130
Rack	· ·	· ·	· ·	•	· ·	 	130 130
Rack	· · · ·	· · · ·	· · · ·	• •	 	· ·	130 130 130
Rack	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• •	 	· · ·	130 130 130 130 132
Rack	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• •	 	· · ·	130 130 130 130 132
Rack	· · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	• •	· ·	· · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132
Rack	· · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	• •	· ·	· · ·	130 130 130 130 132
Rack Physical specifications Physical specifications Environmental specifications Physical specifications Power specifications Physical specifications B EMU generated condition reports Physical specifications	· · ·	· · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• •	• •	•••	130 130 130 132 132 132
Rack Physical specifications Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Power specifications	· · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	• •	· · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 132
Rack Physical specifications Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	• •	· · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135
Rack Physical specifications Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Drive conditions	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	• •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 136
Rack Physical specifications Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Drive configuration or drive link rate	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	• •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 136 136
Rack Physical specifications Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive missing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	• •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 136 136 137
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 136 136 137 137
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Drive missing 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 136 136 136 137 137 137
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Power specifications Correcting errors Power specifications Drive conditions Power specifications 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Power missing 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Power specification 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Power missing 0.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition Loop A drive link Rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 138
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Power specifications Correcting errors Power supply condition Drive conditions Power supply condition O.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Porve missing O.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Porve software lock active O.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Porve software lock active O.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop A drive link Rate incorrect O.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect	••••	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 136 137 137 137 138 138
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Power specification 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition Power Supply AC Input Missing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 138 138 138 139
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Power specification 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition Power Supply Missing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 137 138 138 138 139 139
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Power specifications Correcting errors Power specification Drive conditions Power specification O.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Prive configuration or drive link rate O.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Prive software lock active O.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Prive software lock active O.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition Loop A drive link rate incorrect O.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect O.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition Power Supply AC Input Missing O.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition Power Supply Missing O.2.en.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Load Unbalanced	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 137 138 138 139 139 139
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive condition Drive conditions Ollen.01 CRITICAL condition Drive conditions Drive condition Ollen.01 CRITICAL condition Drive software lock active Ollen.02 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active Ollen.03 INFORMATION condition Drive link Rate incorrect Ollen.04 CRITICAL condition Loop A drive link rate incorrect Ollen.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect Ollen.05 CRITICAL condition Power Supply AC Input Missing Ollen.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition Power Supply Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply AC Input Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Missing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 137 137 138 138 139 139 139 139
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Power specifications Condition report format Power specifications Correcting errors Power specifications Drive conditions Power specification Ol.en.01 CRITICAL condition Prive configuration or drive link rate Ol.en.02 INFORMATION condition Prive software lock active Ol.en.03 INFORMATION condition Prive software lock active Ol.en.04 CRITICAL condition Power supply conditions Ol.en.05 CRITICAL condition Power Supply AC Input Missing Ol.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition Power Supply AC Input Missing Ol.en.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Load Unbalanced Blower conditions Olever speed Olever conditions Olever speed	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 137 137 137 137 137 138 137 137 138 139 139 139 139 140
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition Drive software lock active 0.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition Power Supply Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL Condition Power Supply Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL condition Power Supply Missing 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition Blower speed 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition Blower speed	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 137 137 138 139 139 139 139 140 140
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive missing 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition—Loop A drive link Rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition—Power Supply Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower failure	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 136 137 137 137 137 137 137 137 137 137 137
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition—Loop A drive link Rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower failure 0.3.en.04 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 137 137 137 137 137 137 138 139 139 139 139 139 140 140 140 141
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions Ollen.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate Ollen.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active Ollen.04 CRITICAL condition—Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect Ollen.05 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Missing 0.2.en.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Missing 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Power Supply Missing Ollen.03 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed Ollen.03 CRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal Ollen.03 CNOCRITICAL condition—Blower missing						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 132 132 132 135 135 135 135 136 137 137 137 137 137 137 138 139 139 139 139 139 140 140 140 141 141
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition—Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition—Power Supply Missing 0.3.en.03 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower missing 0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.06 UNRECOVERABLE condition—No blowers installed		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 130 130 130 131 132 132 132 132 132 135 135 136 137 138 139 139 140 140 140 141 141 141
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition—Power Supply Missing 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced Blower conditions 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower failure 0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.06 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower installed Temperature conditions						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 130 130 130 131 132 132 132 132 132 135 135 136 137 138 139 139 140 140 140 141 141 141 141 141
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions Ollen.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate Ollen.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active Ollen.04 CRITICAL condition—Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect Ollen.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing Ollen.02 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced Blower conditions Ollen.03 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced Ollen.03 cen.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower speed Ollen.03 cen.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal Ollen.03 cen.04 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal Ollen.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal Ollen.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.04 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal Ollen.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal <td< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·</td><td>130 130 130 130 130 130 131 132 132 132 132 135 135 136 137 138 139 140 140 140 141 141 141 141 141 141 142</td></td<>						· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	130 130 130 130 130 130 131 132 132 132 132 135 135 136 137 138 139 140 140 140 141 141 141 141 141 141 142
Rack Physical specifications Environmental specifications Power specifications Power specifications Power specifications B EMU generated condition reports Condition report format Correcting errors Drive conditions Drive conditions 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate 0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active 0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Loop A drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing 0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition—Power Supply Missing 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced Blower conditions 0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed 0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower failure 0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower internal 0.3.en.06 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower installed Temperature conditions							130 130 130 130 130 130 131 132 132 132 132 132 135 135 136 137 138 139 140 140 140 140 141 141 141 141 141 141 142 142

	143
J	143
	144
	144 144
	144
	144
	145
	145
	145
	145
	140
	140
0.7.01.13 ONRECOVERABLE condition—EMU enclosure address	140
	140
	147
	147
	147
	147
	140
	140
0.F.en.01 CRITICAL Condition—Iransceiver Incompatibility	148 149
	149
	149
	149
Voltage sensor and current sensor conditions	149
	150
	150
	150
1.2.en.04 CRITICAL Condition—Low Voltage	150
	150
	150
Backplane conditions	151
	151
	151
	151
	151
	151
	152
	152
	152
	152
	153
	153
Host conditions	153
Controller fault management	55
	155
	155
	155
	156
	150
	150
	157
Interpreting Fault Management Information	137
Customer replaceable units	59
	159
Common replacement procedures	159
	160

С

D

Replacing a disk drive	160 161
How to install a drive blank	162
Protecting fiber optic connections	
lossary	65
dex	81

Figures

1	Enterprise Virtual Array 2C12D configuration	17
2	Enterprise Virtual Array storage solution	20
3	Command View EVA interface window	21
4	Storage system hardware components	23
5	FC drive enclosure	24
6	FC loop switch—bezel and front view	25
7	HSV110 controller location—front and rear views	26
8	HSV100 controller—front and rear views	27
9		28
10	Block diagram of the storage system's connections	32
11	Sample node WWN label	37
12		38
13	Initialized Storage System Properties page	41
14	1 1 5	42
15	,	53
16	Sequential building of vertical disk groups	54
17	Removing the drive blank	54
18	Installing the disk drive	55
19	Disk drive status indicators	56
20		60
21	I/O module B	61
22	I/O module A	61
23	·	62
24		62
25	2-Gb fibre optic components	64
26	Copper Fibre Channel cable	65
27		65
28		66
29		68
30		68
31	Drive enclosure EMU	70
32 33		71
	EMU controls and displays	71
34 35	EMU status LEDs	74 75
	Alphanumeric display and controls	
36 27		81
37	5 1	82
38	Enclosure address bus components with JBs	83

39	Enclosure address bus components with shelf ID expansion cables	84
40	Typical operational LED status displays—enclosure front	89
41	Location of LED status displays—enclosure rear	90
42	FC loop switch	91
43	Fibre Channel switch LEDs	92
44	HSV110 controller—front and rear views	94
45		95
46	Navigation push-button icons	95 0 (
47	Default LCD display	96
48 49	HSV110-series controller—front and rear views	104 105
47 50	60-Hz and 50-Hz wall receptacles	105
51	Dual PDU assembly—top view	100
52	228481–002/22481–003 PDU assembly	107
53	Rack PDM Rack PDM	108
53 54	Rack-mounted 252638–001 PDM	109
55	Rack AC power distribution	111
56	10000-Series single rack configuration floor space requirements	113
57	Raising a leveler foot	114
58	Typical enclosure certification label	124
59	Japanese cord caution	124
60	Power supply element numbering	139
61	Blower element numbering	140
62	Disconnecting AC power	147
63	Transceiver element numbering	148
64	I/O module element numbering	152
65	GUI termination event display	155
66	Typical HP Command View EVA Event display	156
67	Typical product label	160
68	Removing a drive	161
69	Removing a drive to install a drive blank	162
70	Installing and removing a drive blank	163

Tables

1 2	Document conventions 14 Failback Preference Settings 46
2	C C
4	5 / 1 5 /
4 5	
-	WWN push-button functions
6 7	System password push-button functions
7	Failback preference settings 46 5 10
8	Failback Settings by Operating System 48 In the set of the set
9	Impact on virtual disk presentation when changing failover/failback setting
10	Operational I/O module status indicators
11	Non-operational I/O module status indicators
12	Disk drive status indicator descriptions
13	Operational drive status displays
14	Non-operational drive status indications
15	Power supply/blower status indicators
16	EMU monitoring functions
17	EMU status indicators
18	EMU LED displays
19	EMU display groups
20	Audible alarm sound patterns 77
21	LED status displays
22	Enclosure status icon displays
23	Fibre Channel switch system LEDs 92
24	Fibre Channel switch port LEDs 93
25	Fibre Channel switch basic troubleshooting 93
26	Controller status icons and LEDs
27	Menu options within the OCP display
28	System information functions
29	Shutdown methods
30	Drive enclosure physical specifications
31	Drive enclosure elements physical specifications
32	Environmental operating specifications
33	Environmental shipping or short-term storage specifications
34	Enterprise storage system AC input line voltages
35	AC input current and wattage
36	Output voltage and current specifications
37	Dual power supply configuration power specifications

38	Fibre Channel switch specifications	129
39	Controller enclosure physical specifications	129
40	Controller power supply AC power requirements	129
41	AC input current and wattage	130
42	Controller power supply output specifications	130
43	9000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Physical Dimensions	131
44	9000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Shipping Dimensions	131
45	9000-Series Enterprise 41U Rack Physical Dimensions	131
46	9000-Series Enterprise 41U Rack Shipping Dimensions	131
47	10000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Physical Dimensions	131
48	10000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Shipping Dimensions	132
49	Environmental operating specifications	132
50	Environmental shipping or short term storage specifications	132
51	Enterprise Virtual Array AC power specifications	133
52	Assigned element type codes	136
53	Temperature sensor element numbering	142
54	Voltage and Current Sensor Locations	150
55	Controller Event Text Description File	158

About this guide

This user guide provides information to help you:

- Learn about the HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array and its components.
- Start up your storage system.
- Operate your storage system.
- Understand HP Command View EVA and its role in the virtual array.
- Understand regulations and specifications.
- Understand EMU-generated error condition reports.
- Understand HSV fault management concepts.
- Install customer replaceable units.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview
- Conventions
- Rack Stability
- Getting Help

Overview

This section contains the following sections:

- Intended Audience
- Related Documentation

Intended audience

This book is intended for use by Enterprise Virtual Array customers involved in the installation, operation, and management of the EVA5000 and EVA3000 storage systems and who are experienced with the following:

- SANs and storage systems.
- Networking and virtual storage concepts.
- Enterprise Virtual Array products.

Related documentation

In addition to this guide, HP provides corresponding information:

- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Release Notes
- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Read Me First
- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array World Wide Name Label
- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Hardware Configuration Guide
- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Upgrade Instructions
- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Installation Instructions
- HP StorageWorks Business Copy License Instructions
- HP StorageWorks Command View EVA Online Help

Conventions

Conventions consist of the following:

- Document Conventions
- Text Symbols
- Equipment Symbols

Document conventions

The document conventions included in Table 1 apply in most cases.

Table 1 Document conventions

Element	Convention
Cross-reference link	Blue text: Figure 1
Key and field names, menu items, buttons, and dialog box titles	Bold
File names, application names, and text emphasis	Italics
User input, command and directory names, and system responses (output and messages)	Monospace font: COMMAND NAMES are uppercase monospace font unless they are case sensitive
Variables	<monospace, font="" italic=""></monospace,>
Website addresses	Blue, underlined sans serif font text: http://www.hp.com

Text symbols

The following symbols may be found in the text of this guide. They have the following meanings:

▲ WARNING!

Text set off in this manner indicates that failure to follow directions in the warning could result in bodily harm or death.

\triangle CAUTION:

Text set off in this manner indicates that failure to follow directions could result in damage to equipment or data.

NOTE:

Text set off in this manner presents commentary, sidelights, or interesting points of information.

Equipment symbols

The following equipment symbols may be found on hardware for which this guide pertains. They have the following meanings:



Any enclosed surface or area of the equipment marked with these symbols indicates the presence of electrical shock hazards. Enclosed area contains no operator serviceable parts.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury from electrical shock hazards, do not open this enclosure.

Any RJ-45 receptacle marked with these symbols indicates a network interface connection.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of electrical shock, fire, or damage to the equipment, do not plug telephone or telecommunications connectors into this receptacle.

Any surface or area of the equipment marked with these symbols indicates the presence of a hot surface or hot component. Contact with this surface could result in injury.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

Power supplies or systems marked with these symbols indicate the presence of multiple sources of power.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury from electrical shock, remove all power cords to completely disconnect power from the power supplies and systems.

Any product or assembly marked with these symbols indicates that the component exceeds the recommended weight for one individual to handle safely.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to the equipment, observe local occupational health and safety requirements and guidelines for manually handling material.

Rack stability

Rack stability protects personnel and equipment.

▲ WARNING!

To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to the equipment, be sure that:

- The leveling jacks are extended to the floor.
- The full weight of the rack rests on the leveling jacks.
- In single rack installations, the stabilizing feet are attached to the rack.
- In multiple rack installations, the racks are coupled.

• Only one rack component is extended at any time. A rack may become unstable if more than one rack component is extended for any reason.

Getting help

If you still have a question after reading this guide, contact an HP authorized service provider or access our website: <u>http://www.hp.com</u>.

HP technical support

Telephone numbers for worldwide technical support are listed on the following HP website: http://www.hp.com/support/. From this website, select the country of origin.

NOTE:

For continuous quality improvement, calls may be recorded or monitored.

Be sure to have the following information available before calling:

- Technical support registration number (if applicable)
- Product serial numbers
- Product model names and numbers
- Applicable error messages
- Operating system type and revision level
- Detailed, specific questions

HP storage website

The HP website has the latest information on this product, as well as the latest drivers. Access storage at: <u>http://www.hp.com/country/us/eng/prodserv/storage.html</u>. From this website, select the appropriate product or solution.

HP authorized reseller

For the name of your nearest HP authorized reseller:

- In the United States, call 1-800-345-1518
- In Canada, call 1-800-263-5868
- Elsewhere, see the HP website for locations and telephone numbers: <u>http://www.hp.com</u>.

1 System description

This chapter provides an overview of the Enterprise Virtual Array and its components.

Introduction

The HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array is a high performance, scaled capacity on demand, "virtual" RAID storage solution. A complement of the current modular array family of StorageWorks solutions (ema8000/ema12000/ema16000), it can coexist in the same Fibre Channel SAN while providing 2-Gbps end-to-end Fibre Channel technology readiness.

The Enterprise Virtual Array is available in multiple configurations in 22U, 36U, 41U, and 42U racks. Each configuration is optimized for general-purpose commercial environments and high-performance technical computing environments. The solutions include support for multivendor operating system platforms and stringent data center availability enhancements, such as multipathing and clustering. Refer to the *HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Release Notes* for information on supported operating systems, Fibre Channel adapters, driver firmware versions, and other support data.

There are two main Enterprise Virtual Array products: EVA5000 and EVA3000. The EVA5000 is available in multiple configurations, ranging from the single-rack 2C2D configuration to the multi-rack 2 x 2C12D + 0C12D configuration. The EVA3000 is available in various configurations, ranging from the 2C2D configuration to the 2C4D configuration. The EVA5000 uses the HSV110 controller, and the EVA3000 uses the HSV100 controller. (See the *HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Hardware Configuration Guide* for more information about racks and configurations.)

Figure 1 shows an EVA5000 2C12D configuration in a 41U rack.

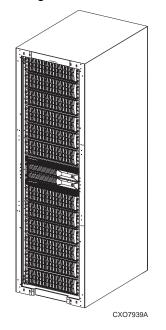


Figure 1 Enterprise Virtual Array 2C12D configuration

Key features and benefits

The Enterprise Virtual Array provides the following features:

Outstanding self-tuning performance:

- Virtualization technology, Vraid, enables data to be distributed from 8 to 240 disks to increase disk spindle count far beyond traditional RAID sets. This virtualization method also optimizes storage for the best performance of a specific configuration and application. The Enterprise Virtual Array eliminates tedious management functions to provide the best performance possible.
- 300 GB 10K RPM disks, increasing the maximum available capacity
- 250 GB disks
- Both online (normal, high-performance) and Fibre Attached Technology Adapted (FATA) (lower-performance) drives.

PNOTE:

Use of FATA drives require VCS v3.020. You cannot use FATA drives without having VCS v3.020 installed.

- EVA3000 (HSV100) single disk enclosure configuration (2C1D)
- Downgrading to an earlier version of VCS without reinitializing the array. This retains all data and avoids time-consuming data restoration.
- State-of-the-art controller software:
 - Improves performance, increases capacity, and allows for easy dynamic storage expansion.
- High-density packaging and support of more disks per controller pair:
 - The EVA5000 offers:
 - Up to 24 TB of storage in a single 41U or 42U rack.
 - Up to 35 TB using 240 disks per controller pair.
 - The EVA3000 offers:
 - Up to 8 TB using 56 disks per controller pair.
 - Up to 22 TB of storage in a single 42U rack.
- Vsnap Virtually Capacity-Free Snapshot:
 - Replicate data instantly by taking a logical picture of the data without reserving an equal amount of capacity. This process saves significant disk space and improves disk efficiency. Available with the optional Business Copy.
- Virtually Instantaneous Snapclone:
 - Makes a complete copy of your data, which is accessible before the copy completes. The copied data can be used as a test platform for application changes and additional performance benchmarking. Available with the optional Business Copy EVA.
- Integrated configurations:
 - Completely integrated configurations with a single part number, plus disk drives, VCS and system platform software kits.
- Easy-to-use storage management tools:
 - Software tools that allow you to manage larger SAN configurations with more servers and more storage solutions.
- Continuous Access EVA
 - Provides remote data replication functionality on the EVA.

Virtualization

Virtualization is used to simplify the creation, presentation, and administration of storage to multivendor host servers in a Storage Area Network (SAN). Virtualization changes the way the storage administrator interacts with storage—streamlining the work required to manage and implement the storage environment. This section describes how virtualization affects storage configuration.

You do not need to make decisions about planning, creating, and configuring stripe-sets, mirror-sets, and RAID-sets. The software now automates these decisions. The decisions are simplified to basic choices on

virtual disk capacity and redundancy levels. All of this work is done from a central location—Command View EVA. See the Command View EVA online help for more information.

Three levels of virtualization are possible within a SAN-server, fabric, and storage system.

- Server level—useful for small systems—StorageWorks Virtual Replicator implements small scale virtualization of storage in a Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003 and Novell NetWare environment.
- Fabric level—SAN-wide virtualization with increased efficiency.
- Storage system level—provides large volumes of pooled storage in virtual disks and simplifies management tasks.

The Enterprise Virtual Array implements storage system level virtualization. Virtualization technology, at the storage system level, creates virtual disks. These virtual disks are created using all the available physical disk drives, not individual or grouped sets of disks. The host recognizes and uses these virtual disks like any other disk device.

Storage system level virtualization is a concept in the storage industry that allows you to focus on higher-level concerns regarding your specific storage needs.

With the Enterprise Virtual Array, you no longer need to manually present storage pools to the host servers. That is, you do not choose specific disks and sets of disks to create levels of redundancy. No decisions need to be made as to which physical disks are involved in each storage unit. When you create virtual disks, the entire set of disks in the cabinet is used for load balancing and sparing, which sets aside extra disk space for failure protection. The Enterprise Virtual Array improves performance because the data is written across many disks and not directed toward a single or specific set of disks.

Setup and management of virtualization is achieved with software and hardware resources. You have greater freedom and control with the following benefits:

- Faster performance with improved system response time
- All SAN and storage management done from a Web browser
- Simplified load-balanced storage
- Simplified decisions about physical disk setup and partitioning
- Increased bandwidth—use of striping algorithms across many disks accessed with multiple spindles
- Simplified high-availability storage techniques
- Recovery from disk failures includes automatic load balancing

Storage system components

The Enterprise Virtual Array consists of four main components:

- Command View EVA—The management software that communicates with the controllers. Together, Command View EVA and the controllers control and monitor Enterprise Virtual Array storage systems.
- VCS—Virtual Controller Software that allows the Enterprise Virtual Array to communicate with Command View EVA, via the controllers.
- Hardware—The physical pieces that constitute the Enterprise Virtual Array, such as drives, enclosures, and controllers. These pieces are combined in a rack and are connected to the SAN.
- Hosts servers—The computers that attach to the storage pools of the Enterprise Virtual Array and use the virtual disks like any other disk resource.

These components work together to create an entire storage system solution. Management is accomplished by accessing command View EVA through your browser.

Figure 2 shows the complete Enterprise Virtual Array storage solution.

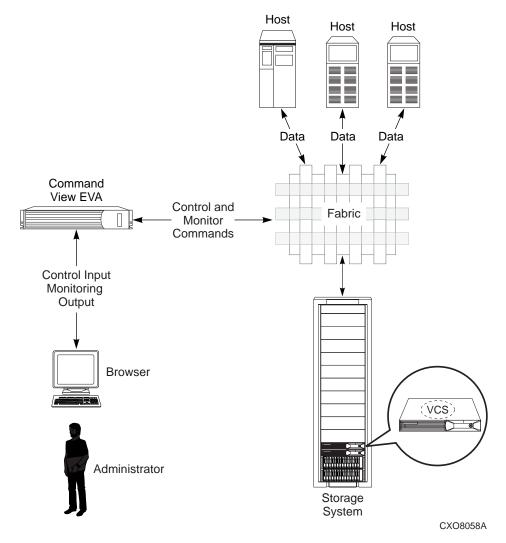


Figure 2 Enterprise Virtual Array storage solution

Command View EVA

As the only user interface to the Enterprise Virtual Array, Command View EVA resides on the HP OpenView Storage Management Appliance (management appliance) and is opened via a Web browser. It is used to perform the following administrative tasks:

- Creating virtual disk families, including selection of Vraid level, cache policy, and host presentation.
- Managing the presentation of Vraid drives to hosts.
- Managing and monitoring storage system hardware.
- Creating snapclones and snapshots of virtual disks.

An online help system is available within the interface, including page-level help.

Interface layout

The interface is divided into three panes:

- Session pane—located across the top of the window. It contains high-level commands and the name and IP address of the Storage Management Appliance.
- Navigation pane—located on the left side of the window. It contains a tree structure for access to virtual disks, hosts, and other elements of the Enterprise Virtual Array.

• Content pane—located on the right side of the window, below the Session pane. It is the largest window and is where most administrative tasks are performed.

Figure 3 shows the Command View EVA interface main window.

	Appliance: localhost 12 elp	7.0.0.1	Session Par	
HSV Storage Network	Initialized St	torage Syst	em Properti	es
	Save changes	Set options	View events	Uninitialize ?
		'A3000	Condition/St Operational	ate state: 🔽 Good (Initialized)
Navigation Pane	Node World Wide N 5000-1FE1-5000-CC		System	
	UUID: 6005-08b4-0001-54	ef-0000-f000-	Type: Version:	HSV100 3010
	022a-0000 Licensed features		ID:	6
	Basic: Snapshot:	Yes Yes		29 Jun 2003 14:07:23
	Data replication:	Yes	Capacity	
	Policies		Total: Used:	270.82 GB 156.68 GB
	Device addition: Disk replacement delay:	Manual 1 mins	Available:	114.14 GB tent Pane
	Comments			

Figure 3 Command View EVA interface window

For more information, see ???.

Command View EVA online help

You will find an extensive online help system for Command View EVA. Three levels of help are available:

- 1. Application—Activated by clicking Help on the Session pane. Application help includes:
 - Navigation by a table of contents
 - Index
 - Keyword search function
- 2. Page—Activated by clicking the ? button in the Content pane.
- 3. Field—Activated by clicking the ? symbol, when displayed next to a field.

Virtual controller software

VCS provides storage controller software capability, including dynamic capacity expansion, automatic load balancing, improved disk utilization, and increased fault tolerance. VCS resides on the HSV controllers and is provided in the HP StorageWorks Virtual Controller Software kit.

VCS benefits

VCS provides scalable capacity on-demand, helps improve performance, increases disk utilization efficiency, and allows for easy dynamic storage expansion by providing the following features:

- High-density packaging and support of more disks per controller pair. Up to 24TB of disk storage in approximately 5.9 square feet (0.5 square meters) using 168 disks.
- Virtually Capacity-Free Snapshot (Vsnap) function that saves significant disk space and improves disk utilization efficiency.
- Virtually Instantaneous Snapclone copy capability that allows immediate use of the clone copy.
- Simplified storage management, such as server-independent storage management, automatic load balancing, and on-the-fly storage expansion to improve management efficiency.

VCS features and functionality

VCS provides the following capabilities:

- Support for up to 240 disk drives per controller pair
- Management of up to 512 virtual disks, ranging in size from 1 GB to 2 TB per virtual disk, per disk pool
- Dynamic capacity expansion and virtual disk data load leveling
- Distributed sparing of disk capacity
- Virtually Capacity-Free Snapshot (Vsnap)
- Virtually Instantaneous Snapclone
- Dual redundant controller operation for increased fault tolerance
- Multiple path failover support
- Battery back-up for cache memory
- Asynchronous disk swap (Hot Swap)
- Clustered server support
- Mirrored write-back cache support
- Read-ahead and adaptive read caching support
- Virtual RAID arrays (Vraid0, Vraid1, Vraid5)
- Non-disruptive software upgrade capability
- Supports connection of up to 256 hosts
- Multivendor platform support
- Controller password protection for configuration control
- Selective storage presentation
- SAN-based data zoning

Additional information about HP StorageWorks Virtual Controller Software can be found online at: http://h18000.www1.hp.com/storage/index.html.

Optional software licensing

Business Copy EVA and Continuous Access EVA require a separate license for each controller pair. Instructions for obtaining a license are included with the software documentation.

Additional information about Business Copy EVA and Continuous Access EVA can be found online at: <u>http://h18006.www1.hp.com/storage/software/index.html</u>.

Hardware

The Enterprise Virtual Array consists of the following hardware components:

- Fibre Channel drive enclosure—Holds disk drives, power supplies, blowers, Input/Output (I/O) modules, transceivers, and an Environmental Monitoring Unit (EMU).
- Fibre Channel loop switch—Provides twelve-port central interconnect for Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loops (FC-AL) following the ANSI FC-AL standard.
- HSV Controller—Manages communications between host systems and other devices. A pair of controllers is included in the Enterprise Virtual Array.
- Rack—A variety of floor-standing racks are available.

NOTE:

Your Enterprise Virtual Array may consist of one or more of the above hardware elements, depending on your configuration.

Physical layout of the storage system

The Enterprise Virtual Array consists of a pair of controllers and an array of disk drives. The basic physical components are shown in Figure 4. The disk drives are installed in drive enclosures, which connect to Fibre Channel (FC) loop switches. The controller pair also connects to the FC loop switches. A backplane in the drive enclosures distributes commands and data to the drives. The EVA3000 does not use FC switches on the back end.

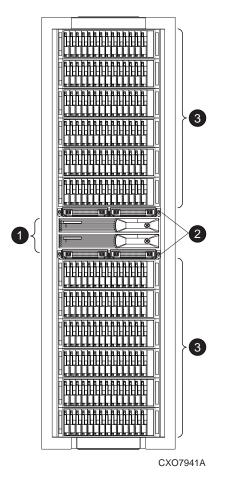


Figure 4 Storage system hardware components

- 1. Controller pair
- 2. FC loop switch (not used in the EVA3000)
- **3.** Drive enclosures

Each hardware component is identified in the following sections and is described in detail in Storage System Hardware Components.

Fibre Channel drive enclosure

Each FC drive enclosure includes the following features:

- 3U drive enclosure
- Dual-redundant, active-to-active, 2-Gbps FC loops
- Fourteen 1-inch FC disks per enclosure
- Environmental Monitoring Unit (EMU)
- Dual 2-Gbps FC I/O modules—A and B loops
 - Enhanced fault detection
 - Single Gigabit Interface Converter
- Dual 500-W redundant hot-plug power supplies and blowers

For ease of reference, the disk drives are referred to by their physical location, the drive bay number.

Figure 5 shows the front view of the FC drive enclosure and the physical location of each drive bay.

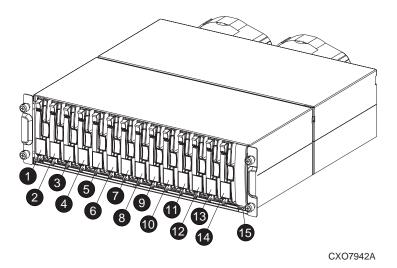


Figure 5 FC drive enclosure

1–14 drive bays

15 enclosure status indicators

Fibre Channel loop switches

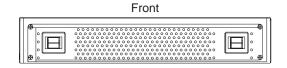
The EVA5000 uses four FC loop switches to connect all of the drive enclosures to the controller pair via FC cables. Each switch acts as a central point of interconnection and establishes a fault-tolerant physical loop topology.

The major features of the FC loop switches are:

- 2.125 Gbps operating speed
- Twelve ports
- Half-width, 1U size
- System and port status LED indicators
- Universal power supply that operates between 100 to 250 VAC and 50 to 60 Hz
- Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) transceivers

Figure 6 shows the bezel and front view of the FC loop switch.

	B	ezel		
	1	1		
<u>с и</u> Ш	0			
0	4	8	0	
 		-0	1 <u> </u>	



CXO8242A

Figure 6 FC loop switch-bezel and front view

NOTE:

Each bezel covers two FC loop switches in a space capacity of 1U. One "U" is 44.45 mm (1.75 inches) high.

EVA5000 HSV110 controllers

Two high-performance HSV110 controllers are contained in one EVA5000 rack. Each controller is contained in a separate enclosure and features:

- High-performance microprocessor
- An Operator Control Panel (OCP) for easy operation
- Two 2-Gbps Fibre Channel-Switched Fabric host ports
- Four 2-Gbps FC-AL device ports
 - Arranged in redundant pairs
 - Data load/performance is balanced across a pair
 - Supports up to 240 disks (120 disks per pair)
- 1-GB cache per controller, mirrored, with battery backup
- 2-Gbps FC cache mirroring port with device port backups
- Dual power supplies

The controller is the interface between Command View EVA and the Enterprise Virtual Array (the interface between hosts and disks). It is the interface to your data and performs I/O correctly and reliably. Up to 18 drive enclosures are supported by one HSV110 controller pair.

Each controller pair consists of two controllers. Figure 7 shows the controllers as they reside in the storage system.

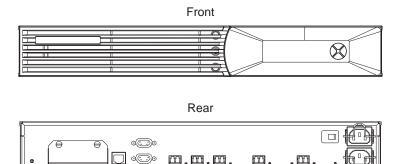
Figure 7 HSV110 controller location—front and rear views

EVA3000 HSV100 controllers

The HSV100 controllers serve as the interface between the storage system hardware and the SAN. All host I/Os and all Command View EVA management commands are processed by the controllers. Up to four drive enclosures are supported by each HSV100 controller pair. Figure 8 shows the HSV100 controller.

Two high-performance HSV100 controllers are included in each EVA3000 storage system. Each controller is installed in a separate enclosure and provides the following features:

- High-performance, PowerPC microprocessor
- An Operator Control Panel (OCP) for easy operation
- 3U cabinet space required for both controller enclosures
- Two 2-Gbps, FC-Switch Fabric host ports
- Two 2-Gbps, FC-AL device ports
 - Arranged as a single redundant pair
 - Data load/performance is balanced across a pair
 - Support for up to 56 disks
- 1-GB cache per controller, mirrored, with battery backup
- 2-Gbps, FC cache mirroring port with device port backups



CXO8054B

Figure 8 HSV100 controller—front and rear views

Rack

The rack provides the capability for mounting standard 483mm (19in) wide controller and drive enclosures.

Three types of racks are available with your Enterprise Virtual Array 5000:

- 9000-Series 42U rack—Available in graphite with a depth of 909mm (35.8in) with industry standard 19in mounting rails.
- 9000-Series 41U rack—Available in graphite with a depth of 993mm (39.1 in) with industry standard 19in mounting rails.
- 10000-Serie 42U rack—Available in graphite with a depth of 1000mm (39.4in) with industry standard 19in mounting rails.

Six types of racks are available with your Enterprise Virtual Array 3000:

- Enterprise 42U Rack—Available in graphite.
- Enterprise 36U Rack—Available in graphite.
- Enterprise 22U Rack—Available in graphite.
- Rack System/E 41U Rack—Available in quartz and graphite.
- Rack System/E 33U Rack—Available in quartz and graphite.
- Rack System/E 25U Rack—Available in quartz.

PNOTE:

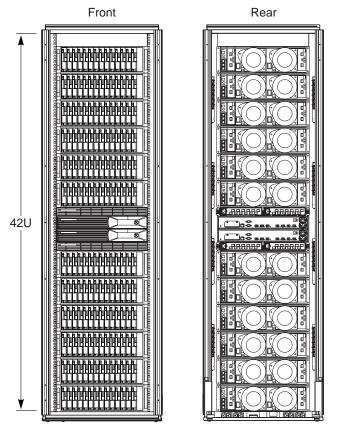
Racks and rack-mountable components are typically described using "U" measurements. "U" measurements are used to designate panel or enclosure heights.

The racks provide the following:

- Unique frame and rail design—Allows fast assembly, easy mounting, and outstanding structural integrity.
- Thermal integrity—Front-to-back natural convection cooling is greatly enhanced by the innovative multi-angled design of the front door.
- Security provisions—The front and rear door are lockable, which prevents unauthorized entry.
- Flexibility—Provides easy access to hardware components for operation monitoring.
- Custom expandability Several options allow for quick and easy expansion of the racks to create a custom solution.
- Housing for all storage system components, including:
 - Cables
 - FC drive enclosures
 - FC loop switches
 - Controllers

• Power Distribution Units (PDUs)

Figure 9 shows the 42U rack.



CXO7945B

Figure 9 42U rack

Hosts and the Enterprise Virtual Array

This section describes how the host servers fit in the overall Enterprise Virtual Array. Below is a list of the hosts that can attach to and interact with the Enterprise Virtual Array:

- Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003
- Tru64 UNIX
- OpenVMS
- Sun Solaris
- HP-UX
- IBM AIX
- Linux

Be sure you are running a supported version of each operating system in your SAN (see the platform-specific release notes for details).

The hosts are components of the Enterprise Virtual Array storage systems. These host servers attach to the storage pools of the Enterprise Virtual Array and use the virtual disks just like any other disk resource. To the host server, virtual disks appear the same as other storage system disk resources.

SAN considerations

Ensure that your SAN components are all supported for use with the Enterprise Virtual Array. Design your SAN with an HP standard topology or by following the HP SAN design rules for creating custom topologies. Refer to the *HP StorageWorks SAN Design Reference Guide* for help with topology rules. The most up-to-date version of this guide can be found on the HP website at http://h18004.www1.hp.com/products/storageworks/san/documentation.html.

2 Startup and operation

This chapter provides the procedures necessary to continue installation and startup of your Enterprise Virtual Array. Please contact an authorized HP service representative to assist with installation.

This chapter consists of:

- Storage system connections
- Procedures for getting started
 - Gathering information
 - Setting up the storage system hardware
 - Entering data using the OCP
 - Installing Command View EVA
 - System shutdown and powerup

EVA5000 storage system connections

Figure 10 shows how the storage system is connected to other components of the storage solution.

- The controller pair connects to two FC fabrics, to which the hosts also connect.
- Command View EVA, through the Storage Management Appliance, also connects to the fabric.
- The controller pair connects to two loop pairs, which connect to the drive enclosures. Each loop
 pair consists of two loops that run independently, but will run for the other loop if a failure occurs.

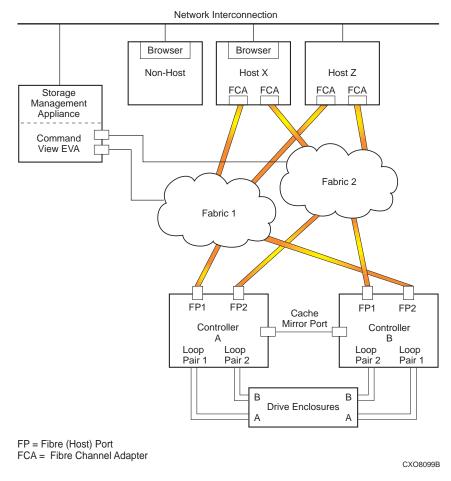


Figure 10 Block diagram of the storage system's connections

EVA3000 storage system connections

Figure 10 shows a typical Enterprise Virtual Array 3000 SAN topology:

- The HSV controllers connect via ports FP1 and FP2 to two Fibre Channel fabrics. The hosts that will access the storage system are connected to the same fabrics. Note that FP1 on each controller is connected to a different fabric to balance the I/O load.
- Command View EVA, which runs on the storage management appliance, also connects to both fabrics.
- The controllers connect through one loop pair to the drive enclosures. The loop pair consists of two independent loops, each capable of managing all the disks should one loop fail.

Procedures for getting started

Follow the process below to guide you through the installation of the storage system:

- 1. Gather information and identify all related storage system documentation.
- 2. Contact an authorized service representative for hardware configuration.
- 3. Enter the storage system World Wide Name (WWN) into the OCP.
- 4. Configure Command View EVA.
- 5. Prepare the hosts.
- 6. Configure the system through Command View EVA.

7. Make virtual disks available to their hosts. Refer to the storage system software documentation for each host's operating system.

Gathering Information

Below is important information you need to know prior to operating the Enterprise Virtual Array. Retrieve the items described below to assist you in completing initialization.

Locate the following items to install the storage system:

- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array World Wide Name Label, which is a separate sheet of paper shipped with the system.
- HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Read Me First document.
- If you bought a license for the snapshot feature, the instructions for installing license keys are included in the HP StorageWorks Business Copy License Instructions document included with your replication license package. If you also bought Continuous Access EVA, licensing instructions are found in the HP StorageWorks Continuous Access EVA Getting Started Guide.
- The latest HP OpenView Storage Management Appliance Update, which consists of the management appliance update CD and its associated documentation.
 - You can determine the latest update version available by checking your Release Notes or contacting your authorized service representative to find out how to receive the latest information.
 - The boxed kit for the operating system of the host computer. If there are hosts running different operating systems, you will need a boxed kit for each operating system. This kit ships separately from the storage system.
 - The boxed kit that contains the hardware documentation and ships with the system. That is the box that this manual came in.

Locate these items and keep them handy. You will need them for procedures in the rest of this manual.

Host information

HP recommends that you make a list of information for each computer (host) that will be used in the storage system. The information you will need for each host is as follows:

- The LAN name of the host
- A list of World Wide Names of the FC adapters, also called host bus adapters, through which the host will connect to the fabric or fabrics that provide access to the storage system
- IP address of each host
- Operating system type
- Available LUN numbers

Additional documentation

For complete information about all documents that pertain to the Enterprise Virtual Array and any other additional documentation that may be required to operate your storage system, see the HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array information page, available at: <u>http://www.hp.com/go/eva5000</u>.

Failback Preference Setting for HSV controllers

Table 2 describes the failback preference mode for each of the operating systems supported with HSV controllers and HP Command View EVA.

Table 3 describes the failback default behavior and settings allowed for each operating system. The table indicates when Secure Path is used in conjunction with the operating system

Setting	Point in time	Behavior	
No preference	At initial presentation	The units are alternately brought online to Controller A or to Controller B.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are alternately brought online to Controller A or to Controller B.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.	
Path A - Failover Only	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.	
Path B - Failover Only	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.	

Table 2 Failback Preference Settings

Setting	Point in time	Behavior	
Path A - Failover/ Failback	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. After controller restoration, the units that are online to Controller B and set to Path A are brought online to Controller A. This is a one time occurrence. If the host then moves the LUN using SCSI commands, the LUN will remain where moved.	
Path B - Failover/ Failback	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. After controller restoration, the units that are online to Controller A and set to Path B are brought online to Controller B. This is a one time occurrence. If the host then moves the LUN using SCSI commands, the LUN will remain where moved.	

Table 3 Failback Settings by Operating System

Operating system	Default behavior	Settings supported
Windows® Secure Path	Autoback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.
Sun Solaris® Secure Path	Autoback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.
HP-UX Secure Path	Autoback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.
IBM AIX Secure Path	Autoback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.
Tru64 UNIX	Host follows the unit	All settings allowed. Recommended setting: Path A/B - Failover/Failback.
VMS (7.3-1 and greater)	Host follows the unit	All settings allowed. Recommended setting: Path A/B - Failover/Failback.
Novell Netware Secure Path	Autoback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.

Changing virtual disk failover/failback setting

Changing the failover/failback setting of a virtual disk may impact which controller presents the disk. Table 4 identifies the presentation behavior that results when the failover/failback setting for a virtual disk is changed.

PNOTE:

If the new setting causes the presentation of the virtual disk to move to a new controller, any snapshots or snapclones associated with the virtual disk will also be moved.

New setting	Impact on virtual disk presentation
No Preference	None. The disk maintains its original presentation
Path A Failover	If the disk is currently presented on controller B, it is moved to controller A. If the disk is on controller A, it remains there.
Path B Failover	If the disk is currently presented on controller A, it is moved to controller B. If the disk is on controller B, it remains there.
Path A Failover/Failback	If the disk is currently presented on controller B, it is moved to controller A. If the disk is on controller A, it remains there.
Path B Failover/Failback	If the disk is currently presented on controller A, it is moved to controller B. If the disk is on controller B, it remains there.

Table 4 Impact on virtual disk presentation when changing failover/failback setting

Obtaining a license key

There is no longer a licensing requirement for initialization of the Enterprise Virtual Array storage system controllers and firmware. However, implementation of the value-added Business Copy EVA or Continuous Access EVA products on Enterprise Virtual Array systems does require licensing. Licensing of the snapshot capability on an Enterprise Virtual Array storage system is included as part of the Business Copy EVA licenses. Activation procedures for Business Copy EVA and Continuous Access EVA licenses are provided with the purchase of the license.

Business Copy EVA

Business Copy EVA can create nearly instantaneous copies of any active volume on the Enterprise Virtual Array for use by other applications or systems for batch processing, backup, or testing, without interrupting current workflow. This data replication eliminates data movement between the host and storage device. Business Copy EVA offers licenses for several capacity levels, based on replicated capacity, rather than on total system capacity.

Continuous Access EVA

Continuous Access EVA provides remote data replication functionality on the EVA and requires a separate license for each HSV controller pair. The Continuous Access EVA license is purchased using its own part number.

Setting up the storage system hardware

To install the storage system hardware, the following procedures must be performed by an authorized service representative. Contact your service representative before proceeding.

- Complete the prerequisites.
- Verify the site requirements.

- Move the rack.
- Stabilize the rack.
- Inspect the storage system.
- Install the controller cache batteries.
- Apply power.
- Attach the controllers to the fabric.

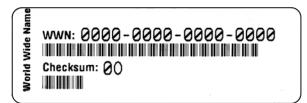
Entering data using the OCP

Two pieces of data critical to initial setup must be entered into the OCP:

- WWN-Mandatory to complete setup.
- Storage system password—Optional. A password is a security interlock that allows only specific instances of Command View EVA to access the storage system.

Setting up a controller pair using the OCP

Fibre Channel protocol requires that each controller pair has a unique Node WWN. This 16-character alphanumeric name identifies the controller pair on the storage system. The Enterprise Virtual Array World Wide Name Label identifies the WWN for each storage system. The Node WWN labels, similar to the one shown in Figure 11, identify the storage system WWN and checksum. During the installation of the storage system, two WWN labels are attached to the rack on both sides of the controller enclosures.



CXO7545A

Figure 11 Sample node WWN label

NOTE:

The controller pair WWN is unique to a controller pair and cannot be used for any other controller pair or device anywhere on the network. Figure 12 shows the location of the WWN label on a controller pair.

This is the only WWN applicable to any controller installed in a specific physical location, even a replacement controller.

Once a WWN is assigned to a controller, you cannot change the WWN while the controller is part of the same storage system.

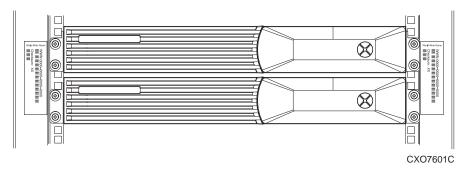


Figure 12 Location of the World Wide Name label

Entering the WWN

Table 5 defines the push-button functions when entering the WWN or the WWN checksum.

NOTE:

The following sections describe procedures that require use of the OCP. For more information about the OCP, see Operator Control Panel.

Table 5 WWN push-button functions

Button	Function
A	Selects a WWN or checksum character by scrolling up through the character list one character at a time. If you select an incorrect character, you can use either A or to select the correct character.
•	Accepts the current character and selects the next character. If you accept an incorrect character, you can move through all 16 characters, one character at a time, until you display the incorrect character. You can then change the character.
▼	Selects a WWN or checksum character by scrolling down through the character list one character at a time. If you select an incorrect character, you can use either A or V to the select correct character.
•	Accepts all the WWN or checksum characters.

Complete the following procedure to assign the WWN to each pair of controllers. Either controller can be used to input the WWN.

PNOTE:

This procedure should be performed by an authorized service representative.

- 1. Place the power switches on both controllers to the Off position.
- 2. Apply power to the rack.
- 3. Place the power switch for both controllers to On.

NOTE:

Notifications of the startup test steps that have been executed are displayed while the controller is booting. This display may not occur for up to two minutes.

4. The WWN entry display has a 0 in each of the 16 positions.

- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ until the first character is displayed. Press ▶ to accept this character and select the next.
- 6. Repeat Step 5 to enter the remaining characters.
- 7. Press \blacktriangleleft to accept the WWN and select the checksum entry mode.

For the location of the WWN Checksum, see Figure 11.

Entering the WWN checksum

The second part of the WWN entry procedure is to enter the 2-character checksum, HS, as follows.

- 1. Verify that the initial WWN checksum displays 0 in both positions.
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ until the first checksum character is displayed. Press ▶ to accept this character and select the second character.
- 3. Press \blacktriangle or $\mathbf{\nabla}$ until the second character is displayed. Press \blacktriangleleft to accept the checksum and exit.
- 4. Verify that the default display is automatically selected. This indicates that the checksum is valid.

If you enter an incorrect WWN or checksum, the system will reject the data and you must repeat the procedure.

NOTE:

If a controller pair is powered off with a WWN entered but without the storage system having been initialized, the WWN will be lost and will have to be re-entered.

An active (flashing) display, an error condition, or a user entry (pressing a push-button) overrides the default display. When none of these conditions exist, the default display appears after approximately 15 seconds.

Setting the storage system password

The eight-character storage system password feature enables you to restrict certain functions to selected resource managers. Table 6 describes the push-button functions when using the password feature.

Button	Function					
	Selects a password character by scrolling up through the character list one character at a time.					
•	 Moves from the default display to the system menu tree. Moves from the system password display to the password entry display. Accepts the current character and selects the next character. If you accept an incorrect character, you can loop through the display, one position at time, to select the character to be changed. 					
•	Selects a password character by scrolling down through the character list one character at a time.					
•	Accepts all the password characters.					

Table 6 Sy	vstem password	push-button	functions
------------	----------------	-------------	-----------

Complete the following procedure to set the password using the push-buttons, as described in Table 6.

1. Determine a unique, eight-character password using uppercase or lowercase letters A through Z.

- 2. With either of the default menus (Storage System Name or Node World Wide Name) displayed, press any push-button to select the menu tree.
- 3. Press ▼ to cycle through the displays until System Password is active (flashing).
- Press ▶ to select the system password function.
- 5. When the System Password function is flashing, press ▶ to select the change password function.
- To change the password, press ▲ or ▼ to show Yes and press ◀.

The default Enter Password function displays the default password, AAAAAAAA.

- Press A or Vuntil the first character of the password is displayed.
- 8. Press be to accept this character and select the next character.
- 9. Repeat the process to enter the remaining password characters, WMFZJJP.
- 10. Press 🗲 to enter the password and return to the default menu display.

The controller pair setup is complete.

Installing Command View EVA

Command View EVA is installed on the HP OpenView Storage Management Appliance and runs in the OpenView environment. Installation may be skipped if the latest version of Command View EVA is running on the storage management appliance. Verify the latest version at the HP website: http://h18006.www1.hp.com/storage/software/index.html.

To install a new version, locate the management appliance update CD-ROM and the associated documentation that was shipped with your storage system. Refer to Additional Documentation. Follow the instructions in the *HP OpenView Storage Management Appliance Update Installation Card* to install the new software.

You will also need a supported browser on the same network as the storage management appliance. This network can be anything from a LAN to the Internet. The documentation that comes with the update CD-ROM contains information on supported browser versions.

When the new software is installed, follow the CD-ROM documentation to get to the OpenView Storage Management Appliance, the launching point for Command View EVA. Follow the instructions in the OpenView Storage Management Appliance online help to navigate to and launch Command View EVA.

Installing Optional EVA Software Licenses

If you purchased optional EVA software, it will be necessary to install the license. Optional software available for the Enterprise Virtual Array 3000 includes Business Copy EVA and Continuous Access EVA. Refer to the documentation included with the software for instructions on installing the license.

System shutdown and power up

The Enterprise storage system is shut down using Command View EVA. Shutdown with Command View EVA performs the following functions:

- Flushes cache
- Removes power from the controllers
- Disables cache battery power
- Removes power from the drive enclosures
- Disconnects the system from Command View EVA

The storage system may take a long time to complete the necessary cache flush during controller shutdown when snapshots are being used. The delay may be particularly long if multiple child snapshots are used, or if there has been a large amount of write activity to the snapshot source Vdisk.

To shut the entire system down, perform the following steps:

- 1. Launch Command View EVA. Click the **HSV Storage Network** icon to discover the storage systems to ensure they are presented.
- 2. In the Navigation pane, click the name of the storage system to access the **Initialized Storage System Properties** page (similar to the screen shown inFigure 13).

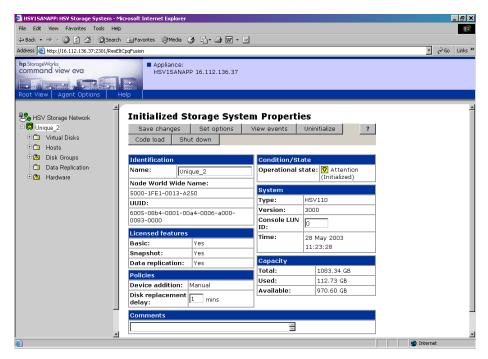


Figure 13 Initialized Storage System Properties page

3. Click **Shut down** at the top of the Content pane. A screen similar to the one shown in Figure 14 displays.

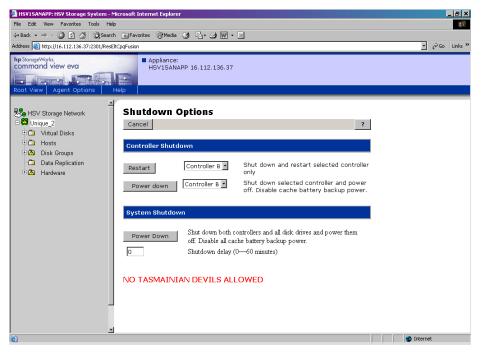


Figure 14 Shutdown Options page

4. In the System Shutdown section of the Content pane, click Power Down to achieve the effect described to the right of the button. If a delayed shutdown is desired, enter a value in the Shutdown delay box to set a time delay (in minutes) to preface system shutdown initiation.

Wait for the shutdown to complete before proceeding. The HSV controllers will perform an orderly shutdown and then power off.

- 5. Turn off the power switch on the rear of each HSV controller.
- 6. Turn off the circuit breakers on both of the EVA rack Power Distribution Units (PDU).
- 7. If the SMA is not being used to manage other storage devices, shut don the SMA.
 - 1. Log into the SMA using the web interface.
 - 2. Click on Settings > Maintenance > Shutdown.

To turn on a storage system, perform the following steps:

1. Verify that each fabric Fibre Channel switch to which the HSV controllers are connected is powered up and fully booted. The LED power indicator on each switch should be on.

If you must power up the SAN switches, wait for them to complete their power-on boot process before proceeding. This may take several minutes.

If the SMA was previously shutdown, power it on and wait for it to completely boot. Verify the SMA is running by logging into it using the web interface.

NOTE:

Before applying power to the rack, ensure that the power switch on each HSV controller is off.

Power on the circuit breakers on both EVA rack PDUs.

Verify that all drive enclosures are operating properly. The status indicator and the power indicator should be on (green).

- **4.** Wait three minutes and then verify that all disk drives are ready. The drive ready indicator and the drive online indicator should be on (green).
- 5. Power on the upper HSV controller. It will assume the roll of master controller.
- 6. Wait 10 seconds and then power on the lower controller. It will assume the roll of slave controller.
- 7. Verify that the (Operator Control Panel) OCP display on each controller displays the storage system name and the EVA WWID.
- 8. Launch Command View EVA and verify connection to the storage system. If the storage system is not visible, click the HSV Storage Network icon in the Navigation pane to discover the recently restarted storage system.

If the storage system is still not seen, it may be necessary to reboot the SMA to re-establish the communication link.

9. Check the array status using Command View EVA to ensure everything is operating properly. If any status indicator is not normal, check the log files or contact your HP service provider for assistance.

3 Enterprise Virtual Array operation

This chapter presents the tasks that you might need to perform during normal operation of the storage system.

Best practices

For useful information on managing and configuring your storage system, refer to the HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array configuration best practices white paper available from http://h71028.www7.hp.com/ERC/downloads/5982-9140EN.pdf.

Operating tips and information

Reserving adequate free space

To ensure efficient storage system operation, a certain amount of unallocated capacity, or free space, should be reserved in each disk group. The recommended amount of free space is influenced by your system configuration. For guidance on how much free space to reserve, refer to the *HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array configuration best practices* white paper. See <u>Best practices</u>.

Using FATA disk drives

FATA drives are designed for lower duty cycle applications such as near online data replication for back-up. These drives should not be used as a replacement for EVA's high performance, standard duty cycle, Fibre Channel drives. Doing so could shorten the life of the drive. Download the following document for more information on FATA drives, their uses and benefits:

http://h71028.www7.hp.com/ERC/downloads/5982-7353EN.pdf

Failback preference setting for HSV controllers

Table 2 describes the failback preference mode for each of the operating systems supported with HSV controllers and Command View EVA.

Table 3 describes the failback default behavior and settings allowed for each operating system. The table indicates when Secure Path is used in conjunction with the operating system

Setting	Point in time	Behavior	
No preference	At initial presentation	The units are alternately brought online to Controller A or to Controller B.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are alternately brought online to Controller A or to Controller B.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.	
Path A - Failover Only	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.	
Path B - Failover Only	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.	

Table 7 Failback preference settings

Setting	Point in time	Behavior	
Path A - Failover/ Failback	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller A.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. After controller restoration, the units that are online to Controller B and set to Path A are brought online to Controller A. This is a one time occurrence. If the host then moves the LUN using SCSI commands, the LUN will remain where moved.	
Path B - Failover/ Failback	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller B.	
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.	
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. After controller restoration, the units that are online to Controller A and set to Path B are brought online to Controller B. This is a one time occurrence. If the host then moves the LUN using SCSI commands, the LUN will remain where moved.	

Operating system	Default behavior	Settings supported	
HP-UX	Autoback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.	
Tru64 UNIX	Host follows the unit	All settings allowed. Recommended setting: Path A/B - Failover/Failback.	
OpenVMS (7.3-1 and greater)	Host follows the unit	All settings allowed. Recommended setting: Path A/B - Failover/Failback.	
Windows®	Auto failback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.	
Sun Solaris®	Auto failback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.	
IBM AIX	Auto failback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only.	
Linux	Auto failback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only	
Novell NetWare	Auto failback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only	
VMware	Auto failback done by the host	No Preference, Path A/B - Failover Only	

Table 8 Failback Settings by Operating System

Changing virtual disk failover/failback setting

Changing the failover/failback setting of a virtual disk may impact which controller presents the disk. Table 4 identifies the presentation behavior that results when the failover/failback setting for a virtual disk is changed.

NOTE:

If the new setting causes the presentation of the virtual disk to move to a new controller, any snapshots or snapclones associated with the virtual disk will also be moved.

New setting	Impact on virtual disk presentation		
No Preference	None. The disk maintains its original presentation		
Path A Failover If the disk is currently presented on controller B, it is moved controller A. If the disk is on controller A, it remains there.			
Path B Failover	If the disk is currently presented on controller A, it is moved to controller B. If the disk is on controller B, it remains there.		
Path A Failover/Failback	If the disk is currently presented on controller B, it is moved to controller A. If the disk is on controller A, it remains there.		
Path B Failover/Failback	If the disk is currently presented on controller A, it is moved to controller B. If the disk is on controller B, it remains there.		

Table 9 Impact on virtual disk presentation when changing failover/failback setting

Storage system shutdown and powerup

The storage system is shut down using HP Command View EVA. The shutdown process performs the following functions in the indicated order:

- 1. Flushes cache
- 2. Removes power from the controllers
- 3. Disables cache battery power
- **4.** Removes power from the drive enclosures
- 5. Disconnects the system from HP Command View EVA

NOTE:

The storage system may take a long time to complete the necessary cache flush during controller shutdown when snapshots are being used. The delay may be particularly long if multiple child snapshots are used, or if there has been a large amount of write activity to the snapshot source Vdisk.

Shutting down the storage system

To shut the storage system down, perform the following steps:

- 1. Start HP Command View EVA.
- 2. Select the appropriate storage system in the Navigation pane.

The Initialized Storage System Properties window for the selected storage system opens.

3. Click System options.

The System Options window opens.

4. Click Shut down.

The Shutdown Options window opens.

 Under System Shutdown click Power Down. If you want to delay the initiation of the shutdown, enter the number of minutes in the Shutdown delay field.

The controllers complete an orderly shutdown and then power off. The disk enclosures then power off. Wait for the shutdown to complete.

- 6. Turn off the power switch on the rear of each HSV controller.
- 7. Turn off the circuit breakers on both of the EVA rack Power Distribution Units (PDU).
- If your management server is an SMA and you are not using it to manage other storage arrays, shut down the SMA. From the SMA user interface, click Settings > Maintenance > Shutdown.

Powering up the storage system

To power up a storage system, perform the following steps:

1. Verify that each fabric Fibre Channel switch to which the HSV controllers are connected is powered up and fully booted. The power indicator on each switch should be on.

If you must power up the SAN switches, wait for them to complete their power-on boot process before proceeding. This may take several minutes.

 If the management server you shut down is an SMA, power it on and wait for it to completely boot. Verify the SMA is running by logging into it using the web interface.

Before applying power to the rack, ensure that the power switch on each HSV controller is off.

- 3. Power on the circuit breakers on both EVA rack PDUs. Verify that all drive enclosures are operating properly. The status indicator and the power indicator should be on (green).
- **4.** Wait three minutes and then verify that all disk drives are ready. The drive ready indicator and the drive online indicator should be on (green).
- 5. Power on the upper controller. It takes the roll of master controller.
- 6. Wait 10 seconds and then power on the lower controller. It takes the roll of slave controller.
- Verify that the (Operator Control Panel) OCP display on each controller displays the storage system name and the EVA WWN.
- Start HP Command View EVA and verify connection to the storage system. If the storage system is not visible, click HSV Storage Network in the Navigation pane then click Discover in the Content pane to discover the array.

PNOTE:

If the storage system is still not visible, reboot the management server to re-establish the communication link.

 Check the storage system status using HP Command View EVA to ensure everything is operating properly. If any status indicator is not normal, check the log files or contact your HP—authorized service provider for assistance.

Saving storage system configuration data

As part of an overall data protection strategy, storage system configuration data should saved during initial installation, and whenever major configuration changes are made to the storage system. This includes adding or removing disk drives, creating or deleting disk groups, and adding or deleting virtual disks. The saved configuration data can save substantial time should it ever become necessary to re-initialize the storage system. The configuration data is saved to a series of files stored in a location other than on the storage system.

This procedure can be performed from the SAN Management Appliance (SMA) or management server where the Command View EVA application is installed, or any host that can run the Storage System Scripting Utility (SSSU) to communicate with the Command View EVA application server.

NOTE:

SSSU version 4 is required for HP Command View EVA 4.0 and later. For more information on using SSSU, refer to the *HP StorageWorks Storage System Scripting Utility reference*, which can be downloaded from the following website:

http://h18006.www1.hp.com/products/storage/software/cmdvieweva/index.html

Click Support & Documentation.

- 1. Run SSSU on the platform and operating system of your choice.
- 2. Enter SELECT MANAGER and select the management server.
- Enter SHOW SYSTEM to determine which storage systems are managed by this instance of HP Command View EVA.
- 4. Enter SELECT SYSTEM to select the appropriate storage system from which to collect configuration data.

5. Enter CAPTURE CONFIGURATION, specifying the full path and filename of the output files for the configuration data.

The configuration data is stored in a series of from one to five files, which are SSSU scripts. The file names begin with the name you choose, with the restore step appended. For example, if you specify a file name of LargeEVA.txt, the resultant configuration files would be LargeEVA_Step1A.txt, LargeEVA_Step1B, etc.

The contents of the configuration files can be viewed with a text editor.

PNOTE:

If the storage system contains disk drives of different capacities, the SSSU procedures used do not guarantee that disk drives of the same capacity will be exclusively added to the same disk group. If you need to restore an array configuration that contains disks of different sizes and types, you must manually recreate these disk groups. The controller software and the utility's CAPTURE CONFIGURATION command are not designed to automatically restore this type of configuration. For more information, refer to the *HP StorageWorks Storage System Scripting Utility reference*.

The following examples illustrate how to save and restore the storage system configuration data using SSSU on a Windows host.

Example 1. Saving configuration data using SSSU on a Windows Host

Run SSSU from a DOS Command Window on the SMA, a Windows Workstation or a Windows Server that can access the SMA by TCP/IP or the management host running Command View.

- 1. Click **Run** on the Window Start menu.
- 2. Enter cmd in the Open field to open the DOS Command Window.
- 3. Change to the directory (CD) in which you have installed SSSU. For example, C:> cd \SSSUDir
- 4. Enter SSSU to run the application.
- Enter SELECT MANAGER <SMAname or ip_addr> user=<username> pass=<userpassword>.
- 6. Enter SHOW SYSTEM to display the EVA storage systems managed by the SMA or Windows Host.
- 7. Enter SELECT SYSTEM <EVA_Name>, where EVA_name is the name of the storage system.

The storage system name is case sensitive. If there are spaces between the letters in the name, quotes must enclose the name. For example, SELECT SYSTEM "Large EVA".

- 8. Enter CAPTURE CONFIGURATION <pathname\filename>, where pathname identifies the location where the configuration files will be saved, and filename is the name used as the prefix for the configurations files. For example, CAPTURE CONFIGURATION c:\EVAConfig\LargeEVA
- 9. Enter EXIT to close the DOS Command Window.

Example 2. Restoring configuration data using SSSU on a Windows Host

If it is necessary to restore the storage system configuration, it can be done using the

- 1. Click **Run** on the Window Start menu.
- 2. Enter cmd in the Open field to open the DOS Command Window.
- 3. Change to the directory (CD) in which you have installed SSSU. For example, C:> cd \SSSUDir
- **4.** Enter SSSU to run the application.
- 5. Enter FILE <pathname\filename>, where pathname identifies the location where the configuration files are be saved and *filename* is the name of the first configuration file. For example, FILE c:\EVAConfig\LargeEVA_Step1A.txt
- **6.** Repeat the preceding step for each configuration file.

Adding disk drives to the storage system

As your storage requirements grow, you may be adding disk drives to your storage system. Adding new disk drives is the easiest way to increase the storage capacity of the storage system. Disk drives can be added online without impacting storage system operation.

\triangle CAUTION:

When adding disks to an expansion cabinet on an EVA5000, do not install a disk in bays 12, 13, or 14 in enclosures 17, 20, or 24. These bays in enclosures 17, 20, and 24 do not receive a hard assigned AL-PA. Installing a disk in any of these slots may impact the operation of the storage system.

Guidelines for adding disk drives

When adding new disk drives to the storage system, you should ensure that the disk drives are installed in the correct positions to maintain availability. The disk drives should be distributed across the disk enclosures to protect against the failure of a single disk enclosure.

Use the following guidelines when adding disk drives to your storage system:

- Install high performance and FATA disk drives in separate groups. These different drive types must be in separate disk groups. You may also want to consider separating different drive capacities and spindle speeds into different groups.
- The disk drives should be distributed evenly across the disk enclosures. The number of disks of
 a given type in each enclosure should not differ by more than one. For example, no enclosure
 should have two disks until all the other enclosures have at least one.
- Disk drives should be installed in vertical columns within the disk enclosures. Add drives vertically in multiples of eight, completely filling columns if possible. Disk groups are more robust if filled with the same number of disk drives in each enclosure. See Figure 16 for an example.

NOTE:

When adding multiple disk drives, add a disk and wait for its activity indicator (1) to stop flashing (up to 90 seconds) before installing the next disk (see Figure 15). This procedure must be followed to avoid unexpected EVA system behavior.

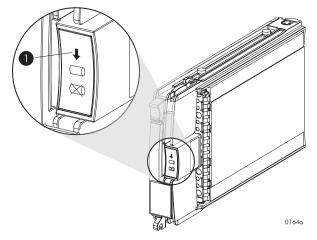


Figure 15 Disk drive activity indicator

Creating disk groups

The new disks you add will typically be used to create new disk groups. Although you cannot select which disks will be part of a disk group, you can control this by building the disk groups sequentially.

Add the disk drives required for the first disk group, and then create a disk group using these disk drives. Now add the disk drives for the second disk group, and then create that disk group. This process gives you control over which disk drives are included in each disk group. Figure 16 shows the sequential building of vertical disk groups.

NOTE:

Standard and FATA disk drives must be in separate disk groups. Disk drives of different capacities and spindle speeds can be included in the same disk group, but you may want to consider separating them into separate disk groups.

o o
1 2
CX8167-ST

Figure 16 Sequential building of vertical disk groups

- 1. Disks installed in first group
- 2. Disks installed in second group

Adding a disk drive

This section describes the procedure for adding a Fibre Channel disk drive.

Removing the drive blank

- 1. Grasp the drive blank by the two mounting tabs (see Figure 17).
- 2. Lift up on the lower mounting tab and pull the blank out of the enclosure.

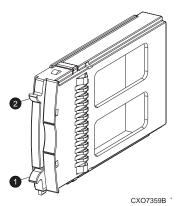


Figure 17 Removing the drive blank

1. Upper mounting tab

2. Lower mounting tab

Changing the Device Addition Policy

To prevent the storage system from automatically grouping a new disk drive that may have the incorrect firmware on it, the Device Addition Policy must be checked and set to manual if necessary:

1. Open Command View VA and in the Navigation pane select the storage system.

The Initialized Storage System Properties window opens.

- 2. Click System Options
- 3. Select Set system operational policies
- 4. If the Device Addition Policy is set to Automatic, change it to Manual
- 5. Click Save changes

₿ NOTE:

If you want to return the Device Addition Policy to automatic, use the above procedure to do so after verifying the disk drive has the correct firmware version.

Installing the disk drive

- 1. Push in the ejector button on the disk drive and pull the release lever down to the full open position.
- 2. Insert the drive into the enclosure as far as it will go (1, Figure 18).
- Close the release lever until it engages the ejector button, and the disk drive seats in the backplane (2, Figure 18).
- 4. Press in firmly on the disk drive to ensure it is seated properly.

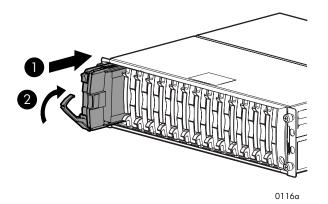


Figure 18 Installing the disk drive

Checking status indicators

After replacing the disk drive, check the following to verify that the disk drive is operating normally:

NOTE:

It may take up to 10 minutes for the component to display good status.

- Check the disk drive status indicators. See Figure 19.
 - Activity indicator (1) should be on or flashing
 - Online indicator (2) should be on or flashing
 - Fault indicator (3) should be off

- Check the following using Command View EVA.
 - Navigate to the disk drive and check the operational state. It should be
 - Record the **Model number** and the **Firmware version**. Check the firmware version against the supported disk firmware in the *HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array release notes*. The most current edition of the release notes can be downloaded from the following website:

http://www.hp.com/go/eva5000

Click Technical documentation.

If the disk drive is using an unsupported version of firmware, download the correct firmware from the following website and install it using the instructions included with the firmware file. Use the disk drive model number to locate the correct firmware file. Do not add the disk drive to a disk group if it using an unsupported firmware version.

2. Online

http://www.hp.com/support/evadiskfirmware

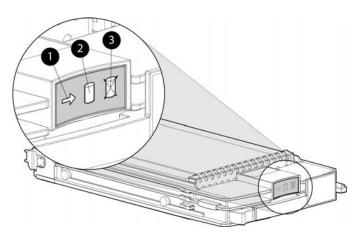


Figure 19 Disk drive status indicators

- 1. Activity
- 3. Fault

Adding the disk to a disk group

After replacing the disk, it should be added to a disk group.

- 1. In the Navigation pane, select Storage system > Hardware > Rack > Disk enclosure > Bay
- 2. In the Content pane, select the **Disk Drive** tab.
- 3. Click **Group** to initiate the process for adding the disk to a disk group.

NOTE:

If the Device Addition Policy is set to automatic, the disk will automatically be added to a disk group. In this case the **Group** option will not be available.

Handling fiber optic cables

This section provides protection and cleaning methods for fiber optic connectors.

Contamination of the fiber optic connectors on either a transceiver or a cable connector can impede the transmission of data. Therefore, protecting the connector tips against contamination or damage is imperative. The tips can be contaminated by touching them, by dust, or by debris. They can be damaged when dropped. To protect the connectors against contamination or damage, use the dust covers or dust caps provided by the manufacturer. These covers are removed during installation, and are installed whenever the transceivers or cables are disconnected. Cleaning the connectors should remove contamination.

The transceiver dust caps protect the transceivers from contamination. Do not discard the dust covers.

\triangle CAUTION:

To avoid damage to the connectors, always install the dust covers or dust caps whenever a transceiver or a fiber cable is disconnected. Remove the dust covers or dust caps from transceivers or fiber cable connectors only when they are connected. **Do not discard the dust covers.**

To minimize the risk of contamination or damage, do the following:

- **Dust covers**—Remove and set aside the dust covers and dust caps when installing an I/O module, a transceiver or a cable. Install the dust covers when disconnecting a transceiver or cable.
- When to clean—If a connector may be contaminated, or if a connector has not been protected by a dust cover for an extended period of time, clean it.
- How to clean:
 - 1. Wipe the connector with a lint-free tissue soaked with 100% isopropyl alcohol.
 - 2. Wipe the connector with a dry, lint-free tissue.
 - 3. Dry the connector with moisture-free compressed air.

One of the many sources for cleaning equipment specifically designed for fiber optic connectors is:

Alcoa Fujikura Ltd.

1-888-385-4587 (North America)

011-1-770-956-7200 (International)

4 Storage system hardware components

This chapter describes the Enterprise hardware components.

Fibre Channel drive enclosures

The drive enclosure contains the disk drives used for data storage. A storage system includes multiple drive enclosures. The major components of the enclosure are:

- 2.125-Gb, dual loop, 14-drive enclosure.
- Dual-loop, FC-AL I/O modules and cable components that are the interface between the drives and the host controllers.
- Fiber optic cables.
- Copper Fibre Channel cables.
- Fibre Channel disk drives and drive blanks.
- Power and cooling components including power supplies, cords, and blowers.
- EMU that monitors the operation of the enclosure and the elements while displaying status. When the EMU detects a condition, it generates a local alarm and reports the condition to the controller.

Enclosure layout

The disk drives mount in bays in the front of the enclosure (Figure 20). The bays are numbered sequentially from left to right. A drive is referred to by its bay number. Enclosure status indicators are located in the lower-right, front corner (see Figure 5). Figure 20 shows the front and rear views of the FC drive enclosure.

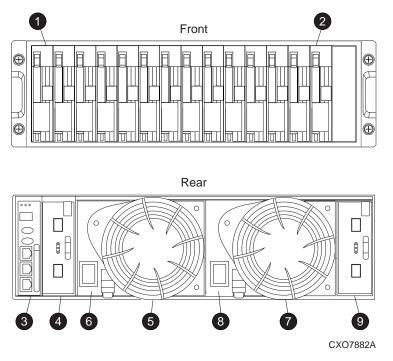


Figure 20 FC drive enclosure-front and rear views

- 1. Drive bay 1
- 2. Drive bay 14
- 3. EMU
- 4. I/O module B
- 5. Blower 1
- 6. Power supply 1
- 7. Blower 2
- 8. Power supply 2
- 9. I/O module A</ara>

FC-AL I/O modules

Two I/O modules (see Figure 23 and Figure 24) provide the interfaces between the drive enclosure and the controllers. They route data to and from the drives using Loop A and Loop B, the dual-loop configuration.

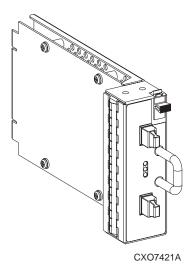


Figure 21 I/O module B

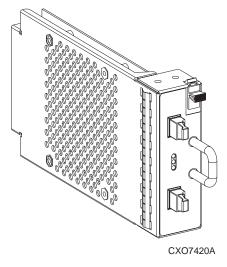


Figure 22 I/O module A

Enterprise supports only dual-controller, dual-loop operation. Each controller is connected to both the I/O module A and I/O module B in each drive enclosure.

The A and B I/O modules are functionally identical, but they are not interchangeable (see Figure 23 for I/O module locations). The physical differences between the modules ensure that you can install:

- The A module (1) only at the right end of the enclosure, behind drive bay 1.
- The B module (2) only at the left end of the enclosure, next to the EMU.

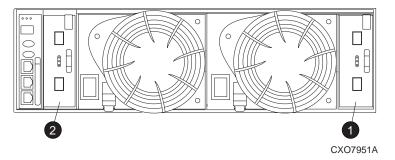


Figure 23 I/O module locations

- 1. I/O module A
- 2. I/O module B

The I/O modules are major components in the Fibre Channel loop. Each module has two ports that can both transmit and receive data for bidirectional operation. Activating a port requires connecting a transceiver to the port via fibre optic cables. The port function depends upon the loop (see Figure 24).

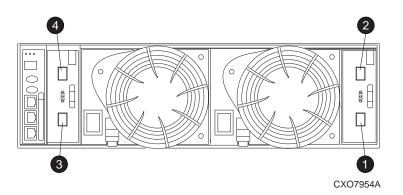


Figure 24 Input and output ports

- 1. Loop A bottom port
- 2. Loop A top port
- 3. Loop B bottom port
- 4. Loop B top port

I/O module status displays

The three green LEDs on the A and B I/O modules display the status. The LED status displays for an operational I/O module are shown in Table 10. Table 11 shows the status displays for a non operational I/O module.

Table 10 Operational I/O module status indicators

Тор	Power	Bottom	Descriptions
Off	On	Off	I/O Module is operational
On	Flashing, then On	On	 Top port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected. Power—Flashes for about 90 seconds after initial power application, then remains constant. Bottom port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected.
On	On	On	 Top port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected. Power—Present. Bottom port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected.
Flashing	Flashing	Flashing	• When the locate function is active, all three indicators flash simultaneously. The Locate function overrides all other indicator functions. Therefore, an error could be detected while the Locate function is active and not be indicated until the Locate action terminates.

Table 11 Non-operational I/O module status indicators

Тор	Power	Bottom	Descriptions
On	On	Off	 Top port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected. Power—Present. Bottom port—No Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected. Check transceiver and fiber cable connections. NOTE: This status applies to configurations with and without FC loop switches.
Off	On	On	 Top port—No Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected. Check transceiver and fiber cable connections. Power—Present. Bottom port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected .
Flashing	On	On	 Top port—EMU detected possible transceiver problem. Check transceiver and fiber cable connections. Power—Present. Bottom port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected .
On	On	Flashing	 Top port—Fibre Channel drive enclosure signal detected. Power—Present. Bottom port—EMU detected possible transceiver problem. Check transceiver and fiber cable connections. NOTE: The EMU will not flash the lower indicator on its own. It will flash only in response to a locate command. You can flash each of the lights independently during a locate action.
Off	Off	Off	 No I/O module power. I/O module is nonoperational. Check power supplies. If power supplies are operational, replace I/O module.

I/O module power

The I/O module +5 VDC power sensing device protects the modules against overcurrent conditions. If the +5 VDC current exceeds 2.5 A rms (nominal), the sensor opens, removing the +5 VDC input from the I/O module, thereby disabling the module until:

- The I/O module is replaced, if defective.
- The overcurrent condition no longer exists.

A disabled I/O module cannot transfer data and disconnects all the drives in the enclosure from the loop.

Fiber optic cables

The Enterprise Virtual Array Fibre Channel 9000-Series implementation uses orange, 50-µm, multi-mode, fibre optic cables. Figure 25 shows the fibre optic cable assembly, which consists of two, 2 m fibre optic strands and small form-factor connectors on each end.



CXO7972A

Figure 25 2-Gb fibre optic components

To ensure optimum operation, the fibre optic components (that is, the transceivers, the fiber optic cable connectors, and the fiber within the cable) require protection from contamination and mechanical hazards. Failure to provide this protection can reduce the amount of light passing through a component, thereby degrading operation. Actions that can avoid degradation include:

- To avoid breaking the fiber within the cable, do not:
 - Kink the cable.
 - Use a cable bend-radius of less than 30 mm (1.18 in).
- To avoid deforming, or possibly breaking the fibre within the cable, do not place heavy objects on the cable.
- To avoid contaminating the optical connectors:
 - Do not touch the connectors.
 - Never leave the connectors exposed to the air.
 - Install a dust cover on each transceiver and fiber cable connector when they are disconnected.

If an open connector is exposed to dust, or there is any doubt about the cleanliness of the connector, clean the connector as described in Protecting Fiber Optic Connections.

Copper Fibre Channel cables

The Enterprise Virtual Array Fibre Channel 10000-Series implementation uses copper Fibre Channel cables to connect the drive enclosures to each other, or to the loop switches and to the HSV controllers. The cables are available in 0.6-meter and 2.0-meter lengths. Copper cables provide performance comparable to fiber optic cables. Copper cable connectors differ from fiber optic small form-factor connectors (see Figure 26).

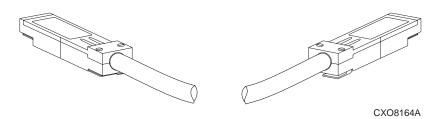


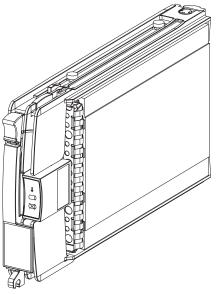
Figure 26 Copper Fibre Channel cable

Fibre Channel disk drives

The Fibre Channel drives are hot-pluggable and include the following features:

- Dual-ported 2 Gbps FC-AL interface that allows up to 120 drives to be supported per FC-AL pair.
- 36 GB, 72 GB, 146 GB, and 300GB10K and 15K rpm, and additional drives as certified.
- Compact, direct-connect design for maximum storage density and increased reliability and signal integrity.
- Both online (normal, high-performance) and near-online (lower-performance) drives.
- Improved drive cooling essential for high performance.
- Better vibration damping for improved performance.
- Greater component commonality throughout the Enterprise Virtual Array.

Up to 14 disk drives can be contained in a Fibre Channel drive enclosure. Figure 27 shows the front view of a Fibre Channel disk drive.



CXO6695B

Figure 27 Fibre Channel disk drive

HP-supplied disk drives conform to the enclosure initiated Enclosure Services Interface (ESI).

\triangle CAUTION:

Maintaining proper air flow within the enclosure requires installing a drive or a drive blank in each drive bay. To avoid overheating, never remove more than one drive or drive blank from an operating enclosure at the same time. To prevent overheating and ensure proper operation, HP recommends installing a drive of equal or greater capacity, or a drive blank, as soon as possible.

Drive status reporting

Three status indicators (see Figure 28) display the drive operational status.

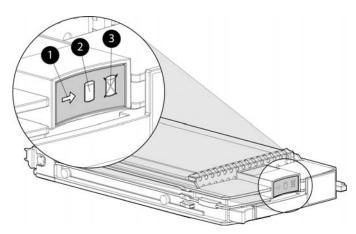


Figure 28 Disk drive status indicators

- 1. Activity indicator
- 2. Online indicator
- 3. Fault indicator

Table 12 describes the status indicators.

Table 12 Disk drive status indicator descriptions

Status indicator	Description		
Activity	This green status indicator is a "drive ready" indicator and is on when the drive is idle.		
Online ()	 The green status indicator for this icon is controlled by the disk drive. The status indicator will be off when: There is no controller on the bus. +5.1 VDC is not available. The drive is not properly installed in the enclosure. 		
Fault	The amber status indicator flashes in synchronization with the other two status indicators in response to the EMU locate command. Depending on the host controller, the indicator for this icon can flash when the controller detects an error condition.		

Drive status displays

The two green and one amber LEDs are either on, off, or flashing. In some configurations, the host controller can control the status LEDs. The operational drive LED status displays are shown in Table 13. See Table 14 for the non-operational drive status LED displays.

Table	13	Operational	drive	status	displays
-------	----	-------------	-------	--------	----------

Activity	On-line	Fault	Description
Flashing (medium speed)	On	Off	Initial startup.
On	On	Off	The operational drive is not being accessed.
Flashing (high speed)	Flashing (medium speed)	On	The drive is being located.
Flashing	On	Off	The drive is operational and active.

The drive is configured as part of an array. DO NOT replace an active drive.

Table 14 Non-operational drive status indications

Activity	On-line	Fault	Description
On	On	On	 Indicates no connection or the controllers are offline. Recommended corrective actions: 1. Check power supplies for proper operation. 2. If defective, replace drive.
On	Off	Flashing	 Indicates drive error/not active. Recommended corrective actions: 1. Verify drive loop continuity. 2. Replace drive.

Drive power

The drive voltage backplane sensors (+5.1 VDC and +12.1 VDC) can detect a drive overcurrent condition. When a drive overcurrent condition exists, the sensor disconnects the voltage from the drive to prevent writing data to the drive. The drive is disabled until one of the following conditions occurs:

- The drive is replaced, if defective.
- The overcurrent condition no longer exists.

Drive blank

To maintain the proper enclosure air flow, a drive or a drive blank must be installed in each drive bay. The drive blanks (see Figure 29) maintain proper airflow within the disk enclosure.

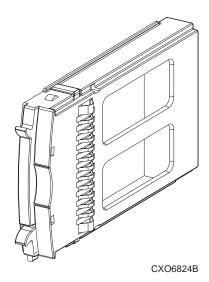


Figure 29 Drive blank

Replacing a disk or drive blank

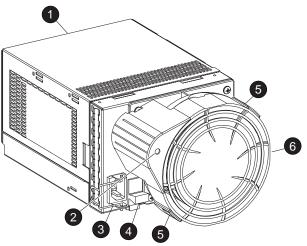
To replace a disk, complete the procedures outlined in Appendix D: Customer Replaceable Units. The disk replacement kit contains detailed replacement instructions.

\triangle CAUTION:

Removing more than one drive at a time can cause the enclosure to overheat. To prevent overheating and ensure proper operation, install a drive of equal or greater capacity, or a drive blank, as soon as possible.

Power and cooling components

This section describes the function and operation of the disk enclosure power supplies and blowers. Figure 30 identifies the major power supply and cooling components.



CXO7489A

Figure 30 Power supply and blower assembly components

- 1. Power supply assembly
- 2. Power supply and blower status LED

- 3. AC Input connector with bail
- 4. Module latch (port-wine colored)
- 5. Blower tabs (port-wine colored)
- 6. Blower element

Enclosure power

The two power supplies mount in the rear of the enclosure. The supplies are autoranging and operate on a country-specific AC input voltage of 202 to 240 VAC $\pm 10\%$, 50 to 60 Hz, $\pm 5\%$, (188 to 264 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz).

The DC outputs of this power supply are:

- +5.1 VDC for the EMU, I/O module, backplane, and drives
- +12.1 VDC for the drives
- +12.5 VDC for the drives

The nominal output of each power supply is 499 W, with a peak output of 681 W. A single power supply can support an enclosure with a full complement of disks, blowers, EMU, and I/O module.

The power supply circuitry provides protection against:

- Overloads
- Short circuits
- Overheating

Power supply status and diagnostic information is reported to the EMU with voltage, current, and temperature signals.

See Appendix A: Regulatory notices and specifications for the enclosure power specifications.

Temperature sensing

The power supply temperature sensor provides a temperature range signal to the EMU. The EMU can use this signal to set the blower speed.

The power supply internal temperature can also set the speed of the blower. The higher the power supply temperature, the faster the speed of the blower. Should the power supply temperature exceed a preset value, the power supply automatically shuts down.

Blowers

The blower mounts on the rear of the power supply. A power supply connector is the interface between the blower and the enclosure for:

- Blower speed control to the blower
- Blower speed to the EMU through the power supply
- Power supply high speed enable
- Blower operating voltage

The power-supplymounted blowers cool the enclosure by circulating air through the enclosure. The rate at which air moves (the air flow) determines the amount of cooling and is a function of blower speed (rpm). These blowers, under the control of the EMU or the associated power supply, can operate at multiple speeds. This ensures that when the enclosure temperature changes the blowers can automatically adjust the air flow.

If a blower is operating too slowly or has stopped (a "blower failure"), internal circuitry automatically operates the remaining blower at a higher speed. Simultaneously, the error condition is reported to you in several ways, including the power supply LED, the audible alarm, the enclosure fault LEDs, and the EMU alphanumeric display.

Should both blowers fail, the power supplies automatically shut down.

The blower units are field-replaceable units. The units can be replaced, individually, while the system is running. The units are also interchangeable. The failure of a power supply +12.5 VDC circuit disables the associated blower.

Power supply and blower status reporting

The green status LED on the blower displays the status of both the power supply and the blower. See Table 15 for definitions of the LED displays.

Table 1	15	Power	suppl	y/	/bl	ower	status	indicators
---------	----	-------	-------	----	------------	------	--------	------------

Blower status LED	Description
On	Both the power supply and the blower are operational.
Flashing	The power supply or the blower locate function is active.
Off	 The power supply or the blower is non-operational. When there is a blower problem, the other blower runs at a higher speed. Recommended corrective actions: Check blower for proper operation. Replace if defective. Check power supplies for proper operation. Replace if defective.

Drive enclosure EMU

The EMU provides increased protection against catastrophic failures. The EMU detects conditions such as failed power supplies, failed blowers, elevated temperatures, and external air sense faults and communicates these conditions to the storage system controllers.

Figure 31 shows the drive enclosure EMU as a standalone unit.

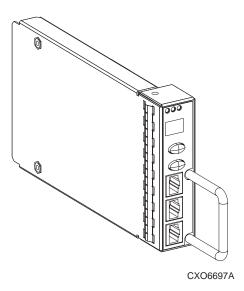


Figure 31 Drive enclosure EMU

The EMU for Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop (FC–AL) drive enclosures is fully compliant with SCSI-3 Enclosure Services (SES), and mounts in the left rear bay of a drive enclosure (see 1, Figure 32).

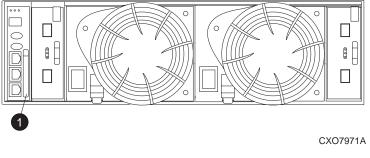


Figure 32 EMU location

1. EMU

Controls and displays

Figure 33 identifies the location and function of the EMU displays, controls, and connectors.

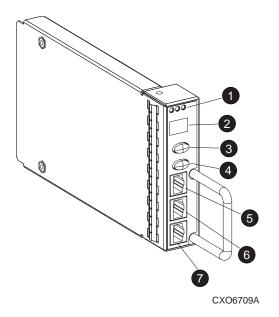


Figure 33 EMU controls and displays

1. Status LEDs

These 3 LEDs display the EMU and enclosure status.

2. Alphanumeric display

A 2-character, 7-segment alphanumeric display of the enclosure functions and status.

3. Function Select (top) push-button

The primary function of this push-button is to select a display group function. The LED is on when an error condition exists.

4. Display Group Select (bottom) push-button

This push-button is used to view display groups and control the audible alarm. The LED is on when the audible alarm is muted or disabled.

- 5. RS232 ONLY-A keyed, RJ45-type connector for use by HP Authorized Service Representatives.
- 6. LCD ONLY-An unused RJ45-type connector.
- 7. CAB ONLY-A keyed, RJ45-type enclosed address bus connector.

▲ WARNING!

To reduce the risk of electrical shock, fire, or damage to the equipment, do not plug telephone or telecommunications connectors into the "RS232 ONLY" receptacle.

EMU functions

The primary functions of the EMU include:

- Using the Enclosure Services Processor (ESP) to control the Enclosure Services Interface (ESI) and communicate with the controllers.
- Assigning the Enclosure Number (En), based upon the cabinet address bus feature.
- Displaying the bay 1 loop ID.
- Monitoring enclosure operation.
- Detecting, reporting, recording, and displaying conditions.
- Displaying EMU, enclosure, and element status.
- Implementing automatic corrective actions for some conditions.
- Providing enclosure status data to the controllers.
- Reporting the WWN and the logical address of all drives.

NOTE:

Although the EMU can determine the logical address of a drive, the EMU can neither display nor change this information. The Command View EVA GUI can display the addresses from the EMU-supplied status information.

EMU monitoring functions

The internal EMU circuitry monitors the enclosure and element functions listed in Table 16.

Table	16	EMU	monitoring	functions
-------	----	-----	------------	-----------

Element	Moni	itored Functions
Blowers	InstallationRemoval	TypeSpeed (rpm)
Disk drives	InstallationRemovalBypass status	Loop IDTemperatureDrive fault
EMU	TemperatureOperation	TypeRevision level
Enclosure	Enclosure powerEnclosure fault	Backplane typeBackplane revision level
I/O module	InstallationRemovalStatus	TypeRevision level
Power supplies	 Installation Removal Status Type Revision level 	 +5 VDC voltage and current +12 VDC voltage and current Total power Temperature
Transceiver	• Туре	• Link status

EMU displays

The EMU uses a combination of LEDs, icons, the two-character alphanumeric display, and an audible alarm to indicate the operational status of the enclosure and the enclosure elements (see Table 17).

Table 17 EMU status indicators

Indicator	Function
Audible Alarm ¹	Any EMU detected condition causes this indicator to sound.
	The EMU LEDs above the icons display the enclosure and EMU status.
Alphanumeric Display ³	The 2-character, 7-segment display can display alpha-numeric characters.

¹For information about the audible alarm, see Enclosure and Element Conditions.
 ²For a description of the LED functions, see EMU LED Displays.
 ³For a description of the alphanumeric display functions, see Using the Alphanumeric Display.

EMU LED displays

The EMU status LEDs are located above the alphanumeric display (see Figure 34). These icons match those on the front, lower right corner of the enclosure.

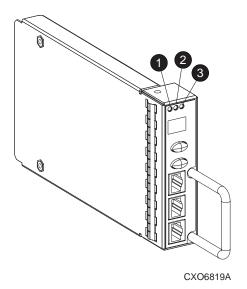


Figure 34 EMU status LEDs

1. EMU Status LED

This flashing green LED is the heartbeat for an operational EMU.

2. Enclosure Power Status LED

This green LED is on when both the +5 V DC and +12 V DC are correct.

3. Enclosure Fault LED

This amber LED is normally Off. The LED is ON when an enclosure error condition exists.

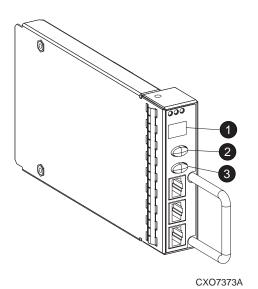
You can determine the EMU and enclosure status by analyzing the EMU LED displays in Table 18.

EMU LED green	Power LED green	Fault LED amber	Status and recommended actions
Flashing	Flashing	Flashing	The EMU locate function is active. This display has precedence over all others. Fault conditions cannot be displayed when the locate function is active.
Flashing	On	Off	The EMU is operational. The enclosure power (both +5 V DC and +12 V DC) is present and correct. There are NO enclosure faults.
Flashing	On	On	The EMU is operational. There is an enclosure fault. Check the alphanumeric display error code for detailed information about the problem.
Flashing	Off	Off	The EMU is operational. This display may be present when power is initially applied to the enclosure. Note : When the +5 VDC is incorrect, all the LEDs are Off.
On	On	Off	There is an EMU fault There is no enclosure fault.
Off	On	Off	There is an EMU fault There is no enclosure fault.
Off	Off	Off	There is an enclosure fault. Either +5 VDC is incorrect, or both +5 VDC and +12 VDC are incorrect. Other error conditions may exist.

Table 18 EMU LED displays

Using the alphanumeric display

The two-character alphanumeric display is located at the top of the EMU (see 1, Figure 35). This 7-segment display provides information about multiple enclosure functions. The push-buttons control the data displayed or entered.



. . . .

Figure 35 Alphanumeric display and controls

1. Alphanumeric display

- 2. Function select (top push-button)
- **3.** Display Group select (bottom push-button)

NOTE:

7-segment display limitations preclude displaying uppercase characters B, K, M, N, Q, R, S, T, V, W, X, Y, or Z, or the lowercase characters a, e, f, g, j, k, l, m, p, q, s, t, v, w, x, y, or z. The lowercase characters b, c, d, h, i, o, r, and u displays are similar to the actual characters.

Alphanumeric display description

The top-level, two-character alphanumeric display (En, Li, rG, Au, and Er), is the display group. The function of the other displays is display-group dependent. The default display is the enclosure number, a decimal number in the range 00 through 14. The push-buttons allow you to select the alphanumeric display or to enter data.

• The bottom push-button (see 3, Figure 35) enables you to sequentially move between groups and to select a display group.

See EMU display groups for a description of these display groups.

• The top push-button, (see 2, Figure 35) enables you to move between the levels within a display group.

Display groups

When you press and release the bottom push-button, the alphanumeric display selects a different display group. EMU display groups describes the display groups.

Table 19 EMU display groups

Display	Display Group	Description
En	Enclosure Number	The enclosure number is the default display and is a decimal number in the range 00 through 14. See Using the Enclosure Number Feature for detailed information.
Li	Bay 1 Loop ID	This display group has a single sublevel display that defines the enclosure bay 1 loop ID. Valid loop IDs are in the range 00 through 7F.
rG	Reporting Group	This display group has two, 2-digit displays that define the reporting group number in the range 0000 through 4095.
Au	Audible Alarm	This display group provides control over the audible alarm or horn. The sublevel displays are audible alarm enabled (on) or audible alarm disabled (oF). See Enclosure and Element Conditions for detailed information.
Fr	Firmware Revision	This display group defines the EMU code firmware version.
Er	Error Condition	This display group reads Er when there is an error condition. See Enclosure and Element Conditions for detailed information.

NOTE:

Any time you press and release the bottom push-button (see 3, Figure 35), the display will change to En, Li, rG, Au, or Er.

A flashing alphanumeric display indicates that you can edit an address, state, or view a condition report.

EMU push-button LEDs

The push-button LEDs display error conditions and the state of the audible alarm.

- When an error condition exists, the top push-button LED is On.
 - For a single error condition, the LED is On until the error condition is viewed.
 - For multiple errors, the LED is On until the last error condition is viewed.
- The bottom push-button LED is On only when the alarm is muted or disabled.

Audible alarm operations

Whenever an error condition exists, the <u>audible alarm</u> automatically sounds until all errors are corrected. You have the option of either muting or disabling the alarm. Using these options results in the following conditions:

- A disabled audible alarm cannot sound.
- Even when muted, any new error condition causes the alarm to sound.

Audible alarm patterns

The duration and number of times the audible alarm sounds, the sound pattern, is a function of the error condition type. See Table 20 for the duration and the approximate relationship of these alarms. The most severe, active error condition controls the alarm pattern.

Table 20 Audible alarm sound patterns

Condition Type	Cycle 1	Cycle 2
UNRECOVERABLE		
CRITICAL		
NONCRITICAL		
INFORMATION		
Legend	Alarm On	Alarm Off

Controlling the audible alarm

You can control the alarm with the push-buttons. This process includes muting, enabling, and disabling. When an error condition exists, the alphanumeric display reads *Er*, the alarm sounds, and you can:

- Correct all errors, thereby silencing the alarm until a new error occurs.
- "Mute," or *temporarily* disable, the alarm by pressing and holding the bottom push-button. The alarm remains Off until another error occurs, or until you enable ("unmute") the alarm. When a new error occurs, the alarm sounds and the push-button LED is Off.

Using the mute feature ensures that you are aware of the more severe errors and provides you with the capability of correcting them promptly.

• Disable the alarm to prevent any error condition from sounding the alarm.

PNOTE:

Disabling the alarm does not prevent the EMU alphanumeric display from displaying Er. Nor does it prevent Command View EVA from displaying the error condition report.

When the alarm is enabled (on), the bottom push-button LED is Off.

Enabling the audible alarm

To enable the alarm:

- 1. Press and release the bottom push-button until the alphanumeric display is Au.
- **2.** Press and hold the top push-button until the alphanumeric display is a Flashing *oF* (Audible Alarm Off).

NOTE:

When the alarm display is *flashing*, pressing and holding the top push-button causes the display to rapidly change between on and oF. Pressing and releasing the top push-button causes the display to select the next state.

- 3. Press and release the top push-button to change the display to a Flashing on (Audible Alarm On).
- **4.** Press and release the bottom push-button to accept the change and to display *Au*. The bottom push-button LED is now Off.

Muting or unmuting the audible alarm

When there is an error condition, determine one of the following:

- The error does not require immediate corrective action.
- You cannot implement a correction (such as, you require a replacement element).

To mute the audible alarm:

NOTE:

Er is displayed in the alphanumeric display when an error condition is present.

1. Press and hold the bottom push-button until the LED is On.

A muted alarm will remain Off until a new condition report exists.

2. To unmute the alarm, press and hold the bottom push-button until the LED is Off. When a new error condition occurs, the alarm will sound.

\triangle CAUTION:

Disabling the audible alarm increases the potential of damage to equipment from a reported but unobserved fault. HP does not recommend disabling the audible alarm.

Disabling the audible alarm affects only one enclosure. This action does not affect condition report displays on the EMU alphanumeric display or the Command View EVA GUI.

To disable the alarm:

- 1. Press and release the bottom push-button until the alphanumeric display is Au.
- Press and hold the top push-button until the alphanumeric display is a Flashing on (Audible Alarm On).

NOTE:

When the alarm display is flashing, pressing and holding the top push-button causes the display to rapidly change between *on* and *oF*.

Pressing and releasing the top push-button causes the display to select the next state.

- 3. Press and release the top push-button to change the display to a Flashing oF (Audible Alarm Off).
- 4. Press and release the bottom push-button to accept the change and display Au. The bottom push-button LED is now On.
- NOTE:

A disabled audible alarm (the bottom push-button LED is On) cannot sound for any error condition. All errors will be displayed on the Command View EVA GUI and the EMU alphanumeric display. HP recommends that rather than disabling the audible alarm, you use the mute function (see How to Mute or Unmute the Audible Alarm). When you use the disable function, you should enable the audible alarm as soon as possible (see How to Enable the Audible Alarm).

Using the enclosure number feature

This section provides a general description of the purpose, function, and operation of the EMU enclosure number (En) feature.

En description

In a single rack configuration, the En is a decimal number in the range 00 through 14, which is automatically assigned by the enclosure address bus.

NOTE:

Your storage system may use an enclosure address bus higher than 14 if your Enterprise supports an optional expansion cabinet.

By default, the two-character alphanumeric display shows this number. Pressing the bottom push-button changes the display to *En*, the En display mode.

When the display is En, pressing and releasing the top push-button displays the enclosure number.

A display of 00 indicates that the enclosure is not connected to the enclosure address bus. When this condition exists, there is no EMU-to-EMU communication over the enclosure address bus. This configuration is known as "just-a-bunch-of-disks," or a JBOD configuration.

A display of 01 through 14 indicates that the enclosure is physically connected to the enclosure address bus and can exchange information with other enclosures on the enclosure address bus. The decimal number indicates the physical position of the enclosure in relation to the bottom of the rack.

- 01 is the address of the enclosure connected to the bottom connector in the first (bottom) junction box (JB).
- 14 is the address of the enclosure closest to end of the bus, the top connector in the last (upper) JB.

NOTE:

The enclosure address bus connection determines the En. For a single rack, the display is a decimal number in the range 01 through 14. For a multiple (two) rack configuration, the display is decimal number in the range 01 through 24. For JBOD configurations the enclosure En display is always 00. You can only display, never change the *En* value.

Unless there is an error condition, the display automatically returns to the enclosure number (01 through 14) one minute after a push-button was last pressed.

Enclosure address bus

The enclosure address bus is composed of cables and either JBs mounted on the rack with screws or shelf ID expansion cables attached to the rack with velcro straps that interconnect the drive enclosures and controller enclosures to provide a means for managing and reporting environmental conditions within the rack. Two drive enclosures connect with keyed 10-pin connectors to each JB or shelf ID expansion cable. The EMUs collect the data for the associated enclosure.

The drive enclosure numbers are always assigned by the enclosure address bus. Connecting the EMU CAB ONLY connector to either an enclosure address bus JB or shelf ID expansion cable automatically establishes an enclosure number of 01-14. Any drive enclosure not connected to the enclosure address bus has the same enclosure number, 00.

NOTE:

The enclosure number is automatically assigned. You cannot manually assign an enclosure number.

Based on the cable bus installation shown in Figure 38, the enclosures are numbered as shown in Figure 36.

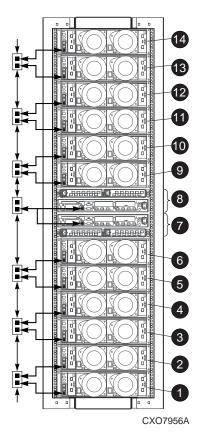
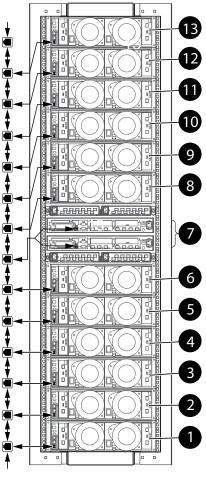


Figure 36 Enclosure numbering with JBs



0046a-2

Figure 37 Enclosure numbering with shelf ID expansion cables

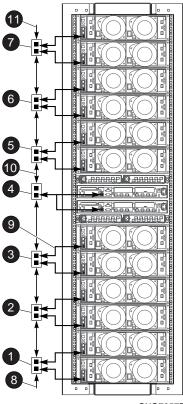
NOTE:

If an expansion rack is used with your Enterprise configuration, the enclosure numbering shown above may change or contain additional numbering. Refer to the *HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Hardware Configuration Guide* for more information.

For more information about the reporting group number, see Viewing the Reporting Group Feature.

Enclosure address bus connections

Connecting the enclosures to the rack JBs or shelf ID expansion cables establishes the enclosure address bus. The enclosures are automatically numbered, based on either the JB or shelf ID expansion cable to which they are connected. Figure 38 and Figure 39 show the typical configuration of a 41U cabinet with 14 enclosures (3U high).



CXO7957B

Figure 38 Enclosure address bus components with JBs

Callouts:

Junction Boxes (JB)

- 1. JB 1–Enclosures 1 and 2
- 2. JB 2–Enclosures 3 and 4
- 3. JB 3–Enclosures 5 and 6
- 4. JB 4–Enclosure 7
- 5. JB 5–Enclosures 9 and 10
- 6. JB 6–Enclosures 11 and 12
- 7. JB 7–Enclosures 13 and 14

Components

- 8. Bottom terminator
- 9. JB-to-Enclosure cable
- **10.** JB-to-JB cable
- **11.** Top terminator

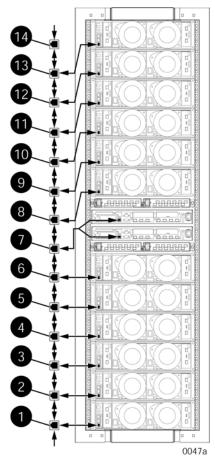


Figure 39 Enclosure address bus components with shelf ID expansion cables Callouts:

- 1. Shelf ID expansion cable port 1—Enclosure 1
- 2. Shelf ID expansion cable port 2—Enclosure 2
- 3. Shelf ID expansion cable port 3—Enclosure 3
- 4. Shelf ID expansion cable port 4—Enclosure 4
- 5. Shelf ID expansion cable port 5—Enclosure 5
- 6. Shelf ID expansion cable port 6—Enclosure 6
- 7. Shelf ID expansion cable port 7—Enclosure 7 (used for both controllers)
- 8. Shelf ID expansion cable port 8—Enclosure 8
- 9. Shelf ID expansion cable port 9—Enclosure 9
- 10. Shelf ID expansion cable port 10-Enclosure 10
- **11.** Shelf ID expansion cable port 11—Enclosure 11
- 12. Shelf ID expansion cable port 12—Enclosure 12
- **13.** Shelf ID expansion cable port 13—Enclosure 13
- 14. Shelf ID expansion cable port 14—Enclosure 14 (not used on the same loop as port 8)

Enclosure and element conditions

The EMU constantly monitors enclosure operations and reports conditions that could affect operations. These errors are grouped, according to their severity, into the following types:

- Unrecoverable condition
- Critical condition
- Noncritical condition

Information condition

See Appendix B: EMU Generated Condition Reports for definitions of individual condition reports.

When the audible alarm is not muted or disabled, each condition generates a unique audible alarm as described in Audible Alarm Patterns.

Using the condition reporting feature

The EMU reports errors to you by changing the alphanumeric display to *Er* and sounding the audible alarm. A condition report has precedence over all other displays.

PNOTE:

An error always generates a condition report. Not all condition reports are generated by errors.

Condition report terminology

Each EMU detected condition generates a condition report containing the following information:

- Element type (et)
- Element number (en)
- Error code (ec)

Each condition report:

- Appears on the EMU alphanumeric display.
- Sounds the audible alarm.
- Is stored in the error queue.
- Is provided to the HSV110 controller for processing and display by Command View EVA.

The condition types, condition reports, and the interaction between conditions are defined in the following sections.

UNRECOVERABLE condition

This is the most severe condition. The condition occurs when one or more enclosure elements fail and disable some enclosure functions. The enclosure may be incapable of correcting or bypassing the failure and require repairs to correct the error.

NOTE:

To maintain data integrity, HP recommends implementing corrective action *immediately* for an UNRECOVERABLE condition.

This type of condition requires immediate corrective action by you.

An UNRECOVERABLE condition establishes the following conditions:

- This condition has precedence over CRITICAL and NONCRITICAL errors.
- This condition has precedence over the INFORMATION condition.
- The audible alarm is On continuously, as shown in Table 20.

CRITICAL condition

A CRITICAL condition is less severe than an UNRECOVERABLE condition. This condition occurs when one or more elements inside the enclosure have failed or are operating outside of their specifications. The failure of the element makes continued normal operation of at least some elements in the enclosure impossible. Other elements within the enclosure may be able to continue normal operations.

Prompt corrective action to prevent system degradation is recommended.

A CRITICAL condition has precedence over NONCRITICAL and INFORMATION conditions, but does not have precedence over UNRECOVERABLE conditions.

When this codition is the most severe active condition, the audible alarm sounds three times per alarm cycle, as shown in Table 20.

NONCRITICAL condition

A NONCRITICAL condition is less severe than an UNRECOVERABLE condition or a CRITICAL condition. This condition occurs when one or more elements inside the enclosure have failed or are operating outside of their specifications. The failure of these elements do not affect continued normal operation of the enclosure. All devices in the enclosure continue to operate according to their specifications. The ability of the devices to operate correctly may be reduced should other errors occur.

Early correction to prevent system degradation is recommended.

A NONCRITICAL condition establishes the following conditions:

- An UNRECOVERABLE condition has precedence over this condition.
- A CRITICAL condition has precedence over this condition.
- This condition has precedence over INFORMATION condition.
- When this condition is the most severe error active, the audible alarm sounds two times per alarm cycle, as shown in Table 20.

INFORMATION condition

An INFORMATION condition is the least severe of the condition reports and does not require immediate correction. It advises you that a condition exists that does not reduce the capability of an element but that could become more severe and require corrective action later.

When only an INFORMATION condition is active, the audible alarm sounds once per alarm cycle, as shown in Table 20.

Error queue

The EMU stores each condition report in the error queue until the problem is corrected, or for at least 15 seconds after the error is reported. This ensures that when there are multiple errors or a recurring error, each can be displayed. The complete report is stored and you recall any report using a combination of the top and bottom push-buttons. Correcting the error removes the condition report from the error queue.

Each report in the queue contains the element type, the element number, and the error code. To remove information from this queue requires either clearing the error or replacing the EMU.

The EMU displays the error queue information based on severity level and time of occurrence.

NOTE:

When you are viewing an error, the occurrence of a more severe error takes precedence and the display changes to the most severe error.

The most severe error in the queue always has precedence, regardless of how long less severe errors have been in the queue.

This hierarchical display ensures that the most severe errors haveprecedence over less severe errors. The earliest reported condition within an error type has precedence over errors reported later. For example, if you have errors at all levels, the EMU displays them as follows:

- **1.** UNRECOVERABLE errors in the sequence they occurred.
- 2. CRITICAL errors in the sequence they occurred.
- 3. NONCRITICAL errors in the sequence they occurred.
- **4.** INFORMATION conditions in the sequence they occurred.

Condition report format

Each condition report identifies the element affected (type and number), and the primary problem (the error code). Appendix B: EMU Generated Condition Reports provides detailed information about each condition report, and includes recommended corrective actions.

• Element Type

This two-digit *hexadecimal* display defines the element type reporting the problem. The format for this display is *e.t.* with a period after each character. Codes *0.1.* through *F.F.* are valid element types.

Element Number

The second display is a two-digit *decimal* number that defines the element reporting the problem. The format for this display is *en*. with a period after the second character.

Error Code

The third display is a two-digit *decimal* number that defines the specific error code. The format for this display is *ec* without any periods.

Navigating the error display

An active error changes the alphanumeric display to *Er* and activates the error menu. The push-button functions are now dedicated to error displays.

For example, should the following conditions exist:

- There is a high temperature CRITICAL condition for the disk drive in bay 9.
- There is a EMU NVRAM write failure NONCRITICAL condition.

As soon as one of these conditions is reported the alphanumeric display is Er, the top push-button LED is On, and the audible alarm is beeping three times per cycle.

Complete the following procedure to analyze the disk drive condition report.

1. To move from the error display to the element type, press and hold the top push-button until the element type is displayed.

NOTE:

The display will first move to the element type display, then to the element number, then to the error code.

- 2. Release the top push-button when the element type is displayed. The display has both decimal points lit.
- 3. Press and release the top push-button again to move to the element number. This display has only the right decimal point lt.
- 4. Press and release the top button again to move to the error code. This display has no decimal points lit. Repeated press/release operations will cycle through these three values.
- 5. Press and hold the top push-button from any of the three display states in step 3 to move to the element type for a new alarm.
- 6. Additional press/release operations cycle through the element type, element number, and error code.

NOTE:

Pressing and releasing the bottom push-button allows you to move from the element type display, the element number display, or the error code display directly to the *Er* display.

Condition report analysis

As described in Appendix B: EMU Generated Condition Reports, condition report analysis involves:

- **1.** Identifying the element.
- 2. Determining the major problem.
- 3. Defining additional problem information.

Viewing the reporting group feature

Another function of the enclosure address bus is to provide communications within a reporting group. A Reporting Group (rG) is an HSV110 controller pair and the associated drive enclosures. The controller pair automatically assigns a unique (decimal) four-digit Reporting Group Number (RGN) to each EMU on an FC-AL.

Each of the drive enclosures on a loop pair are in one reporting group:

- All of the drive enclosures on loop pair 1, both loop 1A and loop 1B, share a unique reporting group number.
- All of the drive enclosures on loop pair 2, both loop 2A and loop 2B, share a unique reporting group number.

Each EMU collects environmental information from the associated enclosure and broadcasts the information to reporting group members using the enclosure address bus. Information from enclosures in other reporting groups is ignored.

Reporting group numbers

The reporting group number (RGN) range is 0000 through 4099, decimal.

- 0000 is reserved for enclosures that are not part of any reporting group.
- 0001 through 0015 are RGNs reserved for use by the EMU.
- 0016 through 4095 are valid RGNs.
- 4096 through 4099 are invalid RGNs.

The reporting group numbers are displayed on the EMU alphanumeric display as a pair of two-digit displays. These two displays are identified as *rH* and *rL*.

- Valid *rH* displays are in the range 00 through 40, and represent the high-order (most significant) two digits of the RGN.
- Valid *rL* displays are in the range 00 through 99, and represent the low-order (least significant) two digits of the RGN.

Viewing a reporting group number

To view a reporting group number:

- 1. Press and release the bottom push-button until the alphanumeric display is rG.
- 2. To display the two most significant digits of the Reporting Group Number, press and hold the top push-button unit the display is *rH*.
- 3. Press and release the top push-button to display the first two digits of the RGN.
- 4. Press and release the top push-button until the alphanumeric display is rH.
- 5. Press and hold the top push-button until the alphanumeric display is rL.
- 6. Press and release the top push-button to display the last two digits of the Reporting Group Number.
- 7. To exit the display, press and release the bottom push-button until the alphanumeric display is rG.

Verifying enclosure operation

Check the enclosure status LEDs in the front, lower right corner (see Figure 40). If the display is not exactly as shown, an error condition exists. To determine the defective element, check the drive status LEDs on the front, the EMU, the power supplies, and the blowers, as well as checking the I/O module status LEDs on the rear (see Table 21).

Either of the drive displays in Figure 40 indicates a properly functioning disk.

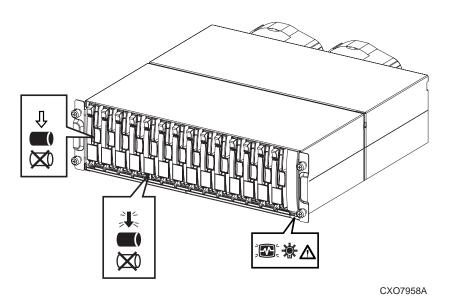




Figure 41 shows the location of the status displays. See Table 21 for state descriptions of the status LEDs.

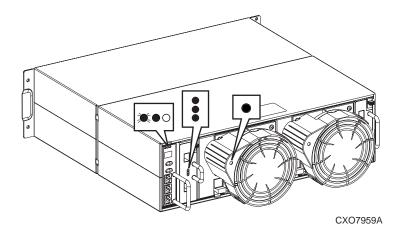


Figure 41 Location of LED status displays—enclosure rear

Table 21 LED status displays

EMU LEDs and icons \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \longrightarrow The enclosure power (both the +5 VDC and +12 VDC) is present and correct. There are NO enclosure faults

I/O module A and I/O module B LEDsFor information about I/O Module LED status displays, see I/O Module Status Displays.

Power supply and blower LEDs Both the power supply and the blower are operational.

Status monitoring and display

The major status monitoring capabilities of these enclosures include:

- Displaying the enclosure status on the enclosure icons
- Displaying the blower, power supply, EMU, drive, and I/O module status on the element LEDs
- Detecting the installation of blowers, power supplies, drives, or I/O modules
- Detecting the removal of blowers, power supplies, drives, or I/O module
- Sensing enclosure internal temperatures
- Sensing power supply voltage, current, and total power
- Sensing ambient temperature

PNOTE:

The ambient temperature is the temperature at the enclosure air intake, or the room temperature.

Enclosure status icons

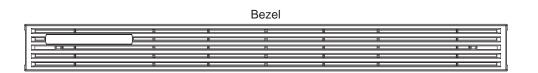
The enclosure status LEDs are located on the enclosure backplane. These LEDs illuminate the status icons (see Table 22) in the front, lower right corner of the enclosures (see Figure 40)

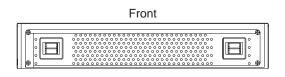
Table 22 Enclosure status icon displays

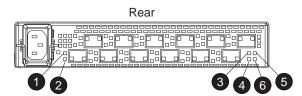
lcon	Off	On	Flashing
EMU "Heartbeat" Icon (green LED)	2	S	
Power Icon (green LED)	\		
Enclosure Status Icon (orange LED)	\triangle		_ ```` _

Fibre Channel loop switches

The EVA 5000 uses four FC loop switches (Figure 42) to connect all of the drive enclosures to the controller pair using FC cables. Each switch acts as a central point of interconnection and establishes a fault-tolerant physical loop topology.







CXO7884A

Figure 42 FC loop switch

- 1. SFP Status LED
- 2. Port Bypassed LED
- 3. POST Fault LED
- 4. Over Temp LED
- 5. Power LED
- 6. Loop Operational LED

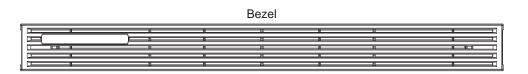
Power-on self test

When you power On the Fibre Channel switch, it performs a Power-On Self Test (POST). A POST verifies that the switch is functioning properly. During a POST, all of the LEDs turn On for approximately two seconds. Then, all of the LEDs, except the Power LED, turn Off.

If the Port Bypass LEDs are blinking at a constant rate and the POST Fault LED is On, the switch detected a fault during the POST. When a POST detects a fault, contact your authorized service representative.

Reading the switch LEDs

The Fibre Channel switch contains both system LEDs and port LEDs. The system LEDs indicate the status of the switch, and the port LEDs provide status of a specific port. Figure 43 shows the Fibre Channel switch with the system and port LEDs.



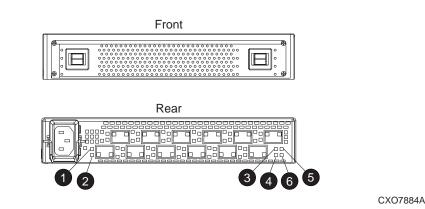


Figure 43 Fibre Channel switch LEDs

- 1. SFP Status LED
- 2. Port Bypassed LED
- 3. POST Fault LED
- 4. Over Temp LED
- 5. Power LED
- 6. Loop Operational LED

Table 23 describes the system LEDs.

Table 23 Fibre Channel switch system LEDs

System LED	Description
Power	A green LED. When lit, this LED indicates that the switch is plugged in and the internal power is functional.
Loop Operational	A green LED. When lit, this LED indicates that the Fibre Channel loop has completed initialization and is now operational.
POST Fault	An amber LED. When lit, this LED indicates that the internal hardware self-test failed and the switch will not function.
Over Temp	An amber LED. When lit, this LED indicates that the <u>ambient temperature</u> has exceeded 45 °C. The switch is still functional; however you should correct the problem immediately. The Over Temp LED turns off when the problem is corrected.

Table 24 describes the port LEDs.

Table 24 Fibre Channel switch port LEDs

SFP status LED Green	Port bypassed LED amber	Description
Off	Off	Indicates that the port does not have an SFP installed and is bypassed by the loop.
On	Off	Indicates that the port is operating normally. The port and device are fully operational.
On	On	Indicates the that port is in a bypassed state. The port is non-operational due to loss of signal, poor signal integrity, or the Loop Initialization Procedure (LIP).NOTE: This condition is also normal when the SFP is present but not attached to an FC-AL node or when the SFP is present and attached to only a cable assembly. Attaching the SFP to a device and plugging it into the port should initiate the LIP by the attached device.
Off	On	Indicates a Tx fault. The port is non-operational due to an SFP transmitter fault, improperly-seated SFP, or another failed device.

Problem isolation

Table 25 lists several basic problems and their solutions.

Table 25 Fibre Channel switch basic troubleshooting

Problem	Recommended action
SFPs are installed in ports but no LEDs are lit.	1. Verify that the power cord is firmly seated in the switch and is connected to the power outlet.2. Check the power LED to verify that the switch is on.
SFP is installed, but the Port Bypassed LED is lit.	Re-seat the SFP. If the same condition occurs, the SFP is probably faulty and should be replaced.
SFP is installed, but the SFP Status LED and the Port Bypassed LED are lit.	This condition indicates that the switch is not receiving a valid Fibre Channel signal or that the switch is receiving an LIP.1. Ensure that the switch is powered on.2. Contact your authorized service representative for further assistance.
SFP is installed and the SFP Status LED is lit, but the devices are not communicating.	This condition indicates that the switch is receiving a valid Fibre Channel signal, but there are no upper level protocols active.1. Verify that you are running the correct firmware on all storage system hardware.2. Check the Loop Operational LED.a. If the Loop Operational LED is lit, the devices have completed initialization.b. If the Loop Operational LED is off, the devices were not initialized. Disconnect the devices from the switch. Reconnect the devices one at a time. This allows you to isolate the device that is responsible for the loop failure.3. Contact your authorized service representative for further assistance.

HSV controllers

This section describes the major features, purpose, and function of the HSV110 and HSV100 controllers. Each Enterprise Virtual Array has a pair of these controllers. Figure 44 shows the HSV110 controller.

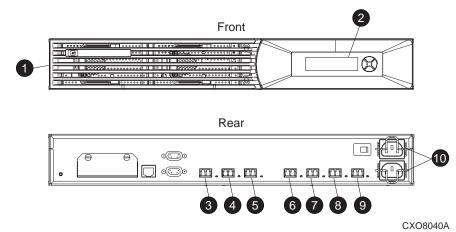


Figure 44 HSV110 controller—front and rear views

- 1. Bezel
- 2. OCP
- 3. HF1 port
- 4. HF2 port
- 5. Mirror port
- 6. 1B port
- 7. 2B port
- 8. 1A port
- 9. 2A port
- 10. Power input

High availability features

Two interconnected controllers ensures that the failure of a controller element (such as a power supply, transceiver, fiber optic or copper Fibre Channel cable, Fibre Channel port, and so forth) does not disable the system. For EVA5000 configurations, the complete data redundancy configuration includes two Loop A and two Loop B data paths. For EVA3000 configurations, data redundancy is accomplished with two Loop A data paths.

A single controller can fully support an entire system until the defective controller, or controller element, is repaired.

If a blower fails, it can be replaced without shutting down the system.

Each HSV110 controller has two lead-acid cache battery assemblies that provide power to the cache memory dual in-line memory modules (DIMMs). Each battery assembly has three lead-acid, nonspillable cells. When both battery assemblies are fully charged, they can provide power to the DIMMs for up to 96 hours.

Operator control panel

The OCP (see Figure 45) is an interface between you and the controller. Much of the information provided here duplicates information displayed on the Command View EVA graphical user interface (GUI). Even if you cannot observe the GUI, or if the GUI is not functioning, the controller status is available on the OCP. You can use the OCP LEDs, the LCD, and the push-buttons to determine the controller status.

The OCP displays system information (status and error conditions) and lets you enter data or isolate problems.

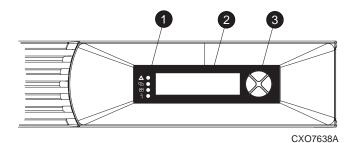


Figure 45 Controller OCP

- 1. Status LEDs (see LEDs)
- 2. 40-character alphanumeric display (see LEDs)
- 3. Push-buttons (see Displaying the Storage System Menu Tree)

LEDs

The status LEDs indicate the internal status of the controller, as described in Table 22. During initial setup, the status LEDs might not be fully operational.

The following sections define the alphanumeric displays modes, including the possible displays, the valid LED displays, and the push-button functions:

lcon	Description
	When the amber LED to the right of this icon is on or flashing, there is a controller problem. Check either the Command View EVA GUI or the LCD Fault Management displays for a definition of the problem and recommended corrective action.
Host Link LED	When the green LED next to this icon is on, there is a link between the storage system and a host. When the red LED next to this icon is on, there is no link between the storage system and a host.
Controller LED	When the green LED next to this icon is flashing slowly, a heartbeat, the controller is operating normally. When this LED is not flashing, there is a problem.
Cache Battery Assembly	When the red LED next to this icon is off, the battery assembly is charged. When this LED is on, the battery assembly is discharged.

Table 26 Controller status icons and LEDs

Navigation push-buttons

The information displayed by the OCP, the data you can enter, and the navigation push-button functions depend on the alphanumeric display mode.

To simplify presentation and to avoid confusion, the push-button reference names, regardless of labels, are *left, right, top,* and *bottom* (see Figure 46).



Figure 46 Navigation push-button icons

LCD

The two LCD rows display up to 20 alphanumeric characters per row. The LCD alternates between displaying the Storage System Name and the Node World Wide Name (seeFigure 47).

NOTE:

An active (flashing) display, an error condition message, or a user entry (pressing a push-button) overrides the default display. When none of these conditions exist, the default display is active after approximately 15 seconds.

Storage System Name:S
SCELL22MAY200111543§
Node WorldWide Name:S
5000-1FE1-0000-0000§

Figure 47 Default LCD display

Displaying the storage system menu tree

The Storage System Menu Tree lets you select information to be displayed (for example, System Information, Fault Management) or select procedures to implement (Shutdown System, System Password). To display this tree, press any push-button (▲, ▼, ◀, or ►) when either of the default displays is active.

- When you select either System Information or Fault Management, you can display, but not change, product information.
- Selecting Shutdown System lets you implement the procedure for shutting down the system in a logical, sequential manner. Using the Shutdown System procedure maintains data integrity and avoids the possibility of losing or corrupting data.
- Selecting System Password lets you create a system password to ensure that only authorized personnel can modify system operation and functions from Command View EVA.

Use the following procedure to select and navigate the storage system menu tree.

1. The default display alternates between the Storage System Name display and the Node World Wide Name display.

Push any push-button to return to the Storage System Menu Tree display.

System Information is the active display.

Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to sequence down through the tree.

Press 🔺 to sequence up through the tree.

Press 🕨 to select an active display.

Press < to return t the default display.

The following table displays all menu options within the OCP display:

Table 27 Menu options within the OCP display

Menu Options	Information	Fault Management	Shutdown Options	System Password
	Port Config	Last Fault	Restart	Change Password
	UUID Unique Half	Detail View	Power Off	Clear Password
	Controller Versions		System Uninitialize	Current Password
	Debug Flags			
	Unbypass Loops			
	Print Flags			

NOTE:

To escape any menu, press \blacktriangleleft or wait 5 seconds for the OCP display to revert back to the root display of the Storage System Name and Node Worldwide Name.

₿ NOTE:

Flashing text on the OCP display indicates the menu option is available for selection.

Displaying system information

NOTE:

The purpose of this information is to assist the authorized service representative when servicing your system.

The system information displays show the system configuration including the VCS version, the OCP firmware and application programming interface (API) versions, and the enclosure address bus programmable integrated circuit (PIC) configuration. You can only view, not change, this information.

When there is no activity for approximately 15 seconds, the display automatically returns to the default display.

NOTE:

Activity is either an active error report or pressing a push-button.

System information functions defines the push-button functions.

Table 28 System information functions

Button	Function		
▼	From the default display, moves from System Info to Fault Management to Shutdown Options to System Password		
	Moves back through the main menu items.		
►	Moves through sub-menu items.		
•	Moves back through sub-menu items.		

Displaying Versions system information

When you press \mathbf{V} , the active display is Versions. From the Versions display you can determine the:

- VCS revision level
- OCP firmware revision level
- PIC (Programmable Integrated Circuit) firmware revision level for:
 - Address Bus PIC
 - Battery PIC
 - Power PC Processor
 - Quasar

NOTE:

The terms PIC, PowerPC Processor, Quasar, glue FPGA, and Surge are for development purposes and have no significance for normal operation.

If the requested version information is not available, the display is always NOT AVAILABLE.

NOTE:

When viewing the software or firmware version information, pressing \blacktriangleleft displays the Versions Menu tree.

To display System Information

1. The default display alternates between the Storage System Name display and the Node World Wide Name display.

Press any push-button to select the Storage System Menu Tree display.

- 2. Press 🕨 to select the Information menu.
- 3. Press **V** to scroll to Controller Versions.
- 4. Press ► to select the Master Version menu or Slave Version menu. If you are operating the master controller, the Master Version menu is displayed. If you are operating the slave controller, the Slave Version menu is displayed.
- 5. Press 🕨 to display the VCS version.
- 6. Press 🗲 to display the Versions Menu tree.
- 7. Press ▼ to scroll to the OCP Firmware.
- 8. Press 🕨 to display the OCP Firmware.
- 9. Press < to display the Versions Menu tree.
- **10.** Press **V** to scroll to the OCP Menu.
- 11. Press 🕨 to display the OCP Menu.
- 12. Press 🗲 to display the Versions Menu tree.
- **13.** Press ▼ to scroll to the Address Bus PIC.
- **14.** Press ▶ to display the Address Bus PIC.
- 15. Press 🗲 to display the Versions Menu tree.
- **16.** Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to the Battery PIC.

- 17. Press b to display the Battery PIC.
- 18. Press \blacktriangleleft to display the Versions Menu tree.
- **19.** Press ▼ to scroll to the PowerPC Processor.
- 20. Press 🕨 to display the PowerPC Processor.
- 21. Press \blacktriangleleft to display the Versions Menu tree.
- **22.** Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to the Quasar version.
- 23. Press 🕨 to display the Quasar version.
- 24. Press 🗲 to display the Versions Menu tree.

Shutting down the system

\triangle **CAUTION**:

To power off the system for more than 96 hours, use Command View EVA.

You can use the shutdown system function to implement the following shutdown methods: (see Table 29)

- Restarting the system (see Restarting the System).
- Turning off the power (see Powering Off the System).
- Uninitializing the system (see Uninitializing the System).

To ensure that you do not mistakenly activate a shutdown procedure, the default state is always NO, indicating *do not implement this procedure*. Implementing any shutdown method requires you to complete at least two actions.

Table 29 Shutdown methods

LCD prompt	Description		
RESTART	Implementing this procedure establishes communications between the storage system and Command View EVA. This procedure is used to restore the controller to an operational state where it can communicate with Command View EVA		
POWER OFF	Implementing this procedure initiates the sequential removal of controller power. This ensures no data is lost. The reasons for implementing this procedure include replacing a disk drive enclosure.		
SYSTEM UNINITIALIZE	Implementing this procedure will cause the loss of all data. For a detailed discussion of this procedure, see Uninitializing the System.		

Shutting the controller down using the LCD menu

Use the following procedure to select the Shutdown System display and execute a shutdown procedure.

NOTE:

Command View EVA is the preferred method for shutting down the controller. Shut down the controller from the OCP only if Command View EVA cannot communicate with the controller.

Shutting down the controller from the OCP removes power from the controller on which the procedure is performed only. To restore power, toggle the controller's power switch.

\triangle CAUTION:

If you decide NOT to Power Off while working in the Power Off menu, the Power Off System NO option must be displayed before you press the ESC (<) push-button to avoid power-down.

- 1. Press **V** to scroll to the Shutdown Options menu.
- Press b to select the Shutdown Options menu.
- 3. Press ▼ to scroll to Power Off.
- 4. Press b to select Power Off.
- 5. Power Off System NO is displayed. Press ◀ to accept NO. Press ▼ to display Power Off System YES.
- Press
 to accept YES.
- 7. Press ▶ to go to POWER OFF SYSTEM.

Once you have selected the Shutdown System function, you can select and execute a shutdown method as described in the following sections.

Restarting the system

To restore the controller to an operational state, use the following procedure to restart the system.

- 1. Press **V** to scroll to the Shutdown Options menu.
- 2. Press 🕨 to select the Shutdown Options menu.
- Press
 to select Restart.
- Press ▶ to display RESTART SYSTEM NO.
 - Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to Power Off.
- Press
 to accept NO.
 - Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to RESTART SYSTEM YES.
- 6. Press ◀ to accept YES and to go toHSV110 Startup.
- No user input is required. The system will automatically initiate the startup procedure and proceed to load the Storage System Name and Node WorldWide Name information from the operational controller.

Powering off the system

Use the following procedure to remove power from the controller pair, save the data, and remove the storage system from Command View EVA.

NOTE:

Implementing this procedure removes power from the controller pair and all associated drive shelves. To restore power to the controller system, you must cycle both PDU breakers in the enclosure.

- 1. Press **V** to scroll to the Shutdown Options menu.
- Press b to select the Shutdown Options menu.
- Press
 to select Restart.
- Press ▼ to scroll to Power Off.

- 5. Press ▶ to select POWER OFF SYSTEM.
- 6. Press **4** to accept NO.
 - Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to power OFF SYSTEM YES.
- 7. Press <- to accept YES.
 - Press \blacktriangle to select NO.

Uninitializing the system

Uninitializing the system is another way to shut down the system. This action causes the loss of all storage system data. Since Command View EVA cannot communicate with the disk drive enclosures, the stored data cannot be accessed. This destroys the storage system and all the data.

\triangle CAUTION:

Uninitializing the system destroys all user data. Any data stored on the system will be permanently destroyed. The WWN will remain in the controller unless both controllers are powered off. The password will be lost. If the controllers remain powered on until you create another storage system (initialize via GUI), you will not have to re-enter the WWN.

Use the following procedure to uninitialize the system

- 1. Press ▼ to scroll to the Shutdown Options menu.
- Press b to select the Shutdown Options menu.
- 3. Press ▼ to scroll to Uninitialize System.
- 4. Press ▶ to select Uninitialize System.
- 5. Press **b** to select UNINITIALIZE SYSTEM NO.
- Press
 to accept NO
 - OR

press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to UNINITIALIZE SYSTEM YES.

- 7. Press \blacktriangleleft to accept YES. REALLY UNINIT SYSTEM NO is now displayed.
- 8. Press **4** to accept NO

OR

press **V** to display REALLY UNINIT SYSTEM YES.

Press
 to accept YES

OR

press **A** to display REALLY UNINIT SYSTEM NO.

10. Press 🗲 to accept NO

OR

- press **V** to display PROCEED YES.
- 11. Press 🗲 to accept YES

OR

- press **A** to display PROCEED NO.
- **12.** The system is uninitialized.

Password options

The password entry options are:

- Entering a password during storage system initialization (see Setting Up an HSV110-Series Controller Pair Using the OCP).
- Showing the current password. The actual password is not displayed, instead an indicator informs you of whether a password has been set.
- Changing a password (see Changing a Password).
- Removing password protection (see Clearing a Password).

Changing a password

For security reasons, you may need to change a storage system password. First you must select a new, unique, eight-character password, using the uppercase letters A through Z and the lowercase letters a through z.

After selecting the new password, use the following procedure to change the password.

NOTE:

Changing a system password on the controller requires changing the password on any Command View EVA with access to this system.

- Press V to scroll to the System Password menu.
- 2. Press 🕨 to select the System Password menu.
- Press b to select Change Password OR

press 🔺 to go to Shutdown Options.

 Press ► to select, CHANGE PASSWORD NO OR

press **V** to scroll to Clear Password.

5. Press **4** to accept NO

OR

press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to CHANGE PASSWORD YES.

6. Press to accept YES

OR

press **A** to scroll to CHANGE PASSWORD NO.

7. To enter the first character, press either **A** or **V** to select an uppercase or lowercase character.

Press F to accept a character and select the next password character. The character display changes to an asterisk.

8. Repeat step 7 for the remaining seven characters.

Press << to accept the password and go to CHANGE PASSWORD YES.

- **10.** The system will automatically return to the default display.

Clearing a password

Use the following procedure to remove storage system password protection.

NOTE:

Changing a system password on the controller requires changing the password on any element manager with access to this system.

- 1. Press ▼ to scroll tot he System Password menu.
- 2. Press 🕨 to select the System Password menu.
- 3. Press ▼ to scroll to Clear Password.
- 4. Press ▶ to select Clear Password

OR

- press 📥 to go to Shutdown Options.
- 5. Press 🗲 to keep the password

OR

press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to scroll to CLEAR PASSWORD YES.

6. Press 🗲 to clear the password

OR

press **A** to keep the current password and go to CLEAR PASSWORD NO.

7. The system will automatically return to the default display.

Setting up a controller pair using the OCP

For information about how to set up a controller pair during initial installation, see Setting Up a Controller Pair Using the OCP.

HSV controller cabling

All data cables and power cables attach to the rear of the HSV110 controller (see Figure 48). Adjacent to each data connector (see 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9) is a two-colored LED that indicates the link status.

- When the green LED is on, the link can communicate.
- When the amber LED is on, the link cannot communicate.

NOTE:

These LEDs do not indicate whether there is communication on the link, only whether the link can transmit and receive data.

The data connections are the interfaces to the disk drive enclosures or loop switches (depending on your configuration), the other controller, and the fabric. Fiber optic cables link the controllers to the fabric, and, if an expansion cabinet is part of the configuration, link the expansion cabinet drive enclosures to the loop switches in the main cabinet. Copper cables are used between the controllers (mirror port) and between the controllers and the drive enclosures or loop switches.

NOTE:

In Figure 48, the connectors are identified by the label printed on the controller. The numbered item captions define the connector function.

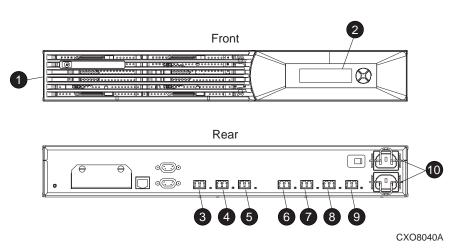


Figure 48 HSV110-series controller—front and rear views

- 1. Bezel
- 2. OCP
- 3. HF1 port
- 4. HF2 port
- 5. Mirror port
- 1B port
- 7. 2B port (EVA 5000 only)
- 8. 1A port
- 9. 2A port (EVA 5000 only)
- 10. Power input

HSV100 controllers use copper fiber channel cables, while HSV110 controller use fiber optic fiber channel cables.

Racks

Each rack has four feet and four casters. Raising the adjustable feet places the rack weight on the casters, so you can easily move the rack. Lowering the feet places the rack weight on the feet and prevents the rack from moving. The removable front and rear doors, and the removable side panels provide easy access to the rack interior.

Each configuration has an upper and lower controller enclosure (the controller pair), drive enclosures, and an expansion bulkhead. Each controller pair and all the associated drive enclosures form a single storage system.

Rack configurations

Each system configuration depends on the following factors:

- The controller pair (Model HSV110)
- The number of 3U Fibre Channel drive enclosures per rack

For more information about racks and configurations, including expansion and interconnection, refer to the HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Hardware Configuration Guide.

Power distribution

AC power is distributed to the rack through a dual Power Distribution Unit (PDU) assembly mounted at the bottom rear of the rack. The characteristics of the fully-redundant rack power configuration are as follows:

 Each PDU is connected to a separate circuit-breaker-protected, 30-A AC site power source (220–240 VAC ±10%, 50 or 60 Hz, ±5%). Figure 49 illustrates the compatible 60-Hz and 50-Hz wall receptacles.



NEMA L6-30R receptacle, 3-wire, 30-A, 60-Hz



CXO5409B

IEC 309 receptacle, 3-wire, 30-A, 50-Hz

Figure 49 60-Hz and 50-Hz wall receptacles

- The standard power configuration for any Enterprise Virtual Array rack is the fully redundant configuration. Implementing this configuration requires:
 - Two separate circuit-breaker-protected, 30-A site power sources with a compatible wall receptacle (see Figure 49).
 - One dual PDU assembly. Each PDU connects to a different wall receptacle.
 - Eight Power Distribution Modules (PDM) per rack. Four PDMs mount vertically on each side of the rack. Each set of four PDMs connects to a different PDU.
 - The drive enclosure power supplies on the left (PS 1) connect to the PDMs on the left with a gray, 66 cm (26 in) power cord.
 - The drive enclosure power supplies on the right (PS 2) connect to the PDMs on the right with a black, 66 cm (26 in) power cord.
 - The upper controller connects to a PDM on the left with a gray, 152 cm (60 in) power cord.
 - The lower controller connects to a PDM on the right with a black, 66 cm (26 in) power cord.

PNOTE:

Drive enclosures, when purchased separately, include one 202 cm (80 in) black cable and one 202 cm (80 in) gray cable.

The configuration provides complete power redundancy and eliminates all single points of failure for both the AC and DC power distribution.

PDUs

Each Enterprise Virtual Array rack has either a 50- or 60-Hz, dual PDU mounted at the bottom rear of the rack. The 30–56205–03/30–56205–04 PDU placement is side-by-side. The 228481–002/228481–003 PDU placement is back-to-back, plugs facing out.

- The standard 50-Hz PDU cable has an IEC 309, 3-wire, 30-A, 50-Hz connector.
- The standard 60-Hz PDU cable has a NEMA L6-30P, 3-wire, 30-A, 60-Hz connector.

If these connectors are not compatible with the site power distribution, you must replace the PDU power cord cable connector.

Each of the two PDU power cables has an AC power source specific connector. The circuit-breaker-controlled PDU outputs are routed to a group of four AC receptacles (see Figure 50). The voltages are then routed to PDMs, sometimes referred to as AC power strips, mounted on the two vertical rails in the rear of the rack.

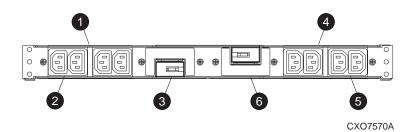


Figure 50 Dual PDU assembly-top view

- 1. PDU 1
- PDU 1 AC receptacles
- 3. PDU 1 circuit breaker
- 4. PDU 2
- 5. PDU 2 AC receptacles
- 6. PDU 2 circuit breaker

PDU 1

PDU 1 connects to AC power distribution source 1. A PDU 1 failure:

- Disables the power distribution circuit.
- Removes power from PDMs 1, 2, 3, and 4.
- Disables PS 1 in the drive enclosures.
- Disables the upper controller power supply.

PDU 2

PDU 2 connects to AC power distribution source 2. A PDU 2 failure:

- Disables the power distribution circuit.
- Removes power from PDMs 5, 6, 7, and 8.
- Disables PS 2 in the drive enclosures.
- Disables the lower controller power supply.

PDU assembly

The dual PDU assembly (see Figure 51) mounts in the lower rear of the rack. This assembly contains two PDUs: PDU 1 and PDU 2. Each PDU has a 250-VAC, 30-A circuit breaker (6 and 12) and four IEC 320-C13 AC output power receptacles (2 through 5, and 8 through 11). The circuit breakers and AC receptacles are accessible when the PDU assembly is in the upright position.

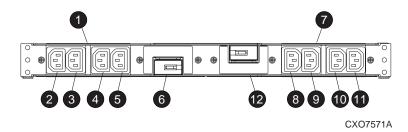


Figure 51 Dual PDU assembly major components

- 1. PDU 1
- 2. PDU 1 receptacle A
- 3. PDU 1 receptacle B
- 4. PDU 1 receptacle C
- 5. PDU 1 receptacle D
- 6. PDU 1 circuit breaker
- 7. PDU 2
- 8. PDU 2 receptacle A
- 9. PDU 2 receptacle B
- 10. PDU 2 receptacle C
- 11. PDU 2 receptacle D
- 12. PDU 2 circuit breaker

During normal operation, the hinged PDU assembly is in the upright position and the rear door is closed.

228481-002/228481-003 PDU models

The 228481–002/22481–003 PDU models allow for greater customer flexibility. The customer can:

- Use the power cord in any standard electrical outlet.
- Replace with little inconvenience.

The PDU nearest the rear of the rack is PDU 1, the other is PDU 2. See Figure 52 for the this PDU assembly.

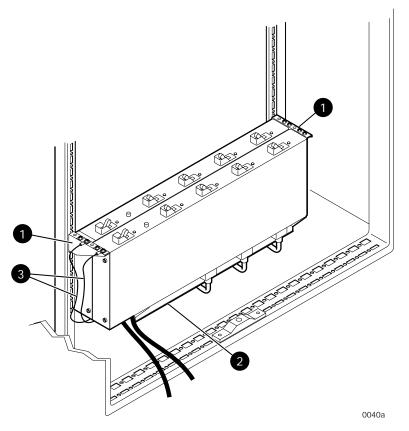


Figure 52 228481-002/22481-003 PDU assembly

- 1. mounting brackets
- 2. cord retention brackets
- **3.** grounding cables

PDMs

There are eight PDMs mounted in the rear of each rack:

- Four mounted on the left vertical rail connect to PDU 1.
- Four mounted on the right vertical rail connected to PDU 2.

Each PDM has six AC receptacles and two thermal circuit breakers. The PDMs distribute the AC power from the PDUs to the enclosures. Two power sources exist for each controller pair and drive enclosure. If a PDU fails, the system will remain operational.

\triangle CAUTION:

The AC power distribution within a rack ensures a balanced load to each PDU and reduces the possibility of an overload condition. Changing the cabling to or from a PDM could cause an overload condition. HP supports only the AC power distributions defined in this user guide.

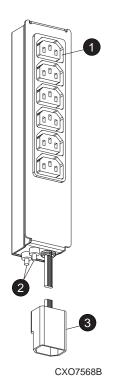


Figure 53 Rack PDM

- 1. Power receptacles
- 2. Thermal circuit breakers
- 3. IEC309 AC power connector

252638-001 PDM model

The 339388–001 PDM mounting brackets are assembled at the top and bottom of each 252638-001 PDM and attach to the rack with either a right- or left-side orientation. See Rack-mounted 252638-001 PDM for this PDM assembly.

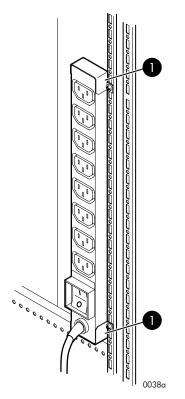


Figure 54 Rack-mounted 252638–001 PDM

1. PDM mounting brackets, right-side orientation.

Rack AC power distribution

The power distribution in an Enterprise Virtual Array rack is the same for all variants. The site AC input voltage is routed to the dual PDU assembly mounted in the rack lower rear. Each PDU distributes AC to a maximum of four PDMs mounted on the left and right vertical rails (see Figure 55).

- PDMs 1 through 4 connect to receptacles A through D on PDU 1. Grey power cords connect these PDMs to the number 1 drive enclosure power supplies and to the *upper controller enclosure*.
- PDMs 5 through 8 connect to receptacles A through D on PDU 2. *Black* power cords connect these PDMs to the number 2 drive enclosure power supplies and to the *lower controller enclosure*.

NOTE:

The locations of the PDUs and the PDMs are the same in all racks.

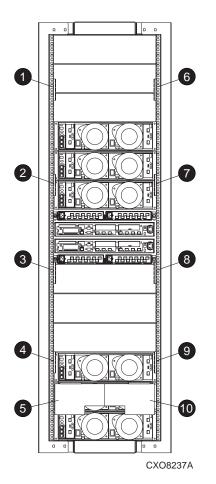


Figure 55 Rack AC power distribution

- 1. PDM 4
- 2. PDM 3
- 3. PDM 2
- 4. PDM 1
- 5. PDU 1
- 6. PDU 8
- 7. PDM 7
- 8. PDM 6
- 9. PDM 5
- 10. PDU 2

Rack System/E power distribution components

AC power is distributed to the Rack System/E rack through Power Distribution Units (PDU) mounted on the two vertical rails in the rear of the rack. Up to four PDUs can be mounted in the rack—two mounted on the right side of the cabinet and two mounted on the left side.

Each of the PDU power cables has an AC power source specific connector. The circuit-breaker-controlled PDU outputs are routed to a group of ten AC receptacles. The storage system components plug directly into the PDUs.

Rack AC power distribution

The power distribution configuration in a Rack System/E rack depends on the number of storage systems installed in the rack. If one storage system is installed, only two PDUs are required. If multiple storage systems are installed, four PDUs are required.

The site AC input voltage is routed to each PDU mounted in the rack. Each PDU distributes AC through ten receptacles directly to the storage system components.

- PDUs 1 and 3 (optional) are mounted on the left side of the cabinet. Grey power cords connect these PDUs to the number 1 drive enclosure power supplies and to the controller enclosures.
- PDUs 2 and 4 (optional) are mounted on the right side of the cabinet. Black power cords connect these PDUs to the number 2 drive enclosure power supplies and to the controller enclosures.

Moving and stabilizing a rack

The physical size and weight of the rack requires a minimum of two people to move. If one person tries to move the rack, injury may occur.

To ensure stability of the rack, always push on the lower half of the rack. Be especially careful when moving the rack over any bump (for example: door sills, ramp edges, carpet edges, or elevator openings). When the rack is moved over a bump, there is a potential for it to tip over.

Moving the rack requires a clear, uncarpeted pathway that is at least 80 cm (31.5 in) wide for the 60.3 cm (23.7 in) wide, 42U rack. A vertical clearance of 203.2 cm (80 in) should ensure sufficient clearance for the 200 cm (78.7 in) high, 42U rack.

\triangle CAUTION:

Ensure that no vertical or horizontal restrictions exist that would prevent rack movement without damaging the rack.

Make sure that all four leveler feet are in the fully raised position. This process will ensure that the casters support the rack weight and the feet do no impede movement.

Each 10000-Series rack requires an area 600 mm (23.62 in) wide and 1000 mm (39.37 in) deep (see Figure 56).

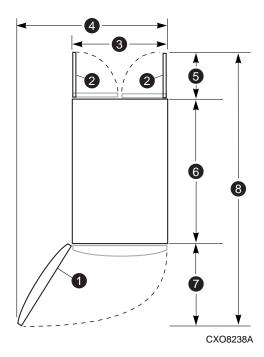


Figure 56 10000-Series single rack configuration floor space requirements

- 1. Front door
- 2. Rear door
- 3. Rack width 600 mm
- 4. Service area width 813 mm
- 5. Rear service area depth 300 mm
- 6. Rack depth 1000 mm
- 7. Front service area depth 406 mm
- 8. Total rack depth 1706 mm

If the feet are not fully raised, complete the following procedure:

- 1. Raise one foot by turning the leveler foot hex nut counterclockwise until the weight of the rack is fully on the caster (see Figure 57).
- 2. Repeat Step 1 for the other feet.

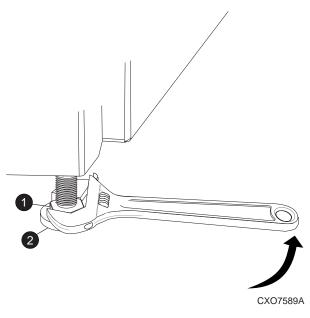


Figure 57 Raising a leveler foot

- 1. Hex nut
- **2.** Leveler foot
- **3.** Carefully move the rack to the installation area and position it to provide the necessary service areas (see Figure 56).

To stabilize the rack when it is in the final installation location:

- 1. Use a wrench to lower the foot by turning the leveler foot hex nut clockwise until the caster does not touch the floor
- 2. Repeat step 1 for the other feet.
- 3. After lowering the feet, check the rack to ensure it is stable and level.
- 4. Adjust the feet as necessary to ensure the rack is stable and level.

A Regulatory notices and specifications

This section provides regulatory notices and specifications for the various components of the Enterprise Virtual Array storage system.

Regulatory notices

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) notice

Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and Regulations has established Radio Frequency (RF) emission limits to provide an interference-free radio frequency spectrum. Many electronic devices, including computers, generate RF energy incidental to their intended function and are, therefore, covered by these rules. These rules place computers and related peripheral devices into two classes, A and B, depending upon their intended installation. Class A devices are those that may reasonably be expected to be installed in a business or commercial environment. Class B devices are those that may reasonably be expected to be installed in a residential environment (for example, personal computers). The FCC requires devices in both classes to bear a label indicating the interference potential of the device as well as additional operating instructions for the user.

The rating label on the device shows the classification (A or B) of the equipment. Class B devices have an FCC logo or FCC ID on the label. Class A devices do not have an FCC logo or FCC ID on the label. After the class of the device is determined, refer to the corresponding statement in the following sections.

FCC Class A certification

This equipment generates, uses, and may emit radio frequency energy. The equipment has been type tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such radio frequency interference.

Operation of this equipment in a residential area may cause interference, in which case the user at the user's own expense will be required to take whatever measures may be required to correct the interference.

Any modifications to this device—unless approved by the manufacturer—can void the user's authority to operate this equipment under Part 15 of the FCC rules.

NOTE:

Additional information on the need to interconnect the device with shielded (data) cables or the need for special devices, such as ferrite beads on cables, is required if such means of interference suppression was used in the qualification test for the device. This information will vary from device to device and needs to be obtained from the HP EMC group.

Class A equipment

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at personal expense.

Class B equipment

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit that is different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or television technician for help.

Declaration of conformity for products marked with the FCC logo, United States only

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

For questions regarding your product, refer to <u>http://thenew.hp.com</u>.

For questions regarding this FCC declaration, contact:

- Hewlett-Packard Company, Product Regulations Manager, 3000 Hanover St.Palo Alto, CA 94304
- Or call 1-650-857-1501

To identify this product, refer to the part, series, or model number found on the product.

Modifications

The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Hewlett-Packard Company may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Cables

Connections to this device must be made with shielded cables with metallic RFI/EMI connector hoods in order to maintain compliance with FCC Rules and Regulations.

Laser device

All Hewlett-Packard systems equipped with a laser device comply with safety standards, including International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 825. With specific regard to the laser, the equipment complies with laser product performance standards set by government agencies as a Class 1 laser product. The product does not emit hazardous light; the beam is totally enclosed during all modes of customer operation and maintenance.

Laser safety warnings

Heed the following warning:

△ WARNING!

WARNING: To reduce the risk of exposure to hazardous radiation:

• Do not try to open the laser device enclosure. There are no user-serviceable components inside.

• Do not operate controls, make adjustments, or perform procedures to the laser device other than those specified herein.

• Allow only HP authorized service technicians to repair the laser device.

Compliance with CDRH regulations

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration implemented regulations for laser products on August 2, 1976. These regulations apply to laser products manufactured from August 1, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States.

Certification and classification information

This product contains a laser internal to the Optical Link Module (OLM) for connection to the Fibre communications port.

In the USA, the OLM is certified as a Class 1 laser product conforming to the requirements contained in the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) regulation 21 CFR, Subchapter J. The certification is indicated by a label on the plastic OLM housing.

Outside the USA, the OLM is certified as a Class 1 laser product conforming to the requirements contained in IEC 825-1:1993 and EN 60825-1:1994, including Amendment 11:1996.

The OLM includes the following certifications:

- UL Recognized Component (USA)
- CSA Certified Component (Canada)
- TUV Certified Component (European Union)
- CB Certificate (Worldwide)

Canadien notice (avis Canadien)

Class A equipment

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

Class B equipment

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

European union notice

Products with the CE Marking comply with both the EMC Directive (89/336/EEC) and the Low Voltage Directive (73/23/EEC) issued by the Commission of the European Community.

Compliance with these directives implies conformity to the following European Norms (the equivalent international standards are in parenthesis):

- EN55022 (CISPR 22) Electromagnetic Interference
- EN55024 (IEC61000-4-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 11) Electromagnetic Immunity
- EN61000-3-2 (IEC61000-3-2) Power Line Harmonics
- EN61000-3-3 (IEC61000-3-3) Power Line Flicker
- EN60950 (IEC950) Product Safety

Notice for France

DECLARATION D'INSTALLATION ET DE MISE EN EXPLOITATION d'un matériel de traitement de l'information (ATI), classé A en fonction des niveaux de perturbations radioélectriques émis, définis dans la norme européenne EN 55022 concernant la Compatibilité Electromagnétique.

WEEE Recycling Notices

English notice

Disposal of waste equipment by users in private household in the European Union



This symbol on the product or on its packaging indicates that this product must not be disposed of with your other household waste. Instead, it is your responsibility to dispose of your waste equipment by handing it over to a designated collection point for recycling of waste electrical and electronic equipment. The separate collection and recycling of your waste equipment at the time of disposal will help to conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service, or the shop where you purchased the product.

Dutch notice

Verwijdering van afgedankte apparatuur door priv-gebruikers in de Europese Unie



Dit symbool op het product of de verpakking geeft aan dat dit product niet mag worden gedeponeerd bij het normale huishoudelijke afval. U bent zelf verantwoordelijk voor het inleveren van uw afgedankte apparatuur bij een inzamelingspunt voor het recyclen van oude elektrische en elektronische apparatuur. Door uw oude apparatuur apart aan te bieden en te recyclen, kunnen natuurlijke bronnen worden behouden en kan het materiaal worden hergebruikt op een manier waarmee de volksgezondheid en het milieu worden beschermd. Neem contact op met uw gemeente, het afvalinzamelingsbedrijf of de winkel waar u het product hebt gekocht voor meer informatie over inzamelingspunten waar u oude apparatuur kunt aanbieden voor recycling.

Czechoslovakian notice

Likvidace za?zen soukrommi domcmi uivateli v Evropsk unii



Tento symbol na produktu nebo balen ozna?uje vrobek, kter nesm bt vyhozen spolu s ostatnm domcm odpadem. Povinnost uivatele je p?edat takto ozna?en odpad na p?edem ur?en sb?rn msto pro recyklaci elektrickch a elektronickch za?zen. Okamit t?d?n a recyklace odpadu pom?e uchovat p?rodn prost?ed a zajist takov zp?sob recyklace, kter ochrn zdrav a ivotn prost?ed ?lov?ka. Dal informace o monostech odevzdn odpadu k recyklaci zskte na p?slunm obecnm nebo m?stskm ?ad?, od firmy zabvajc se sb?rem a svozem odpadu nebo v obchod?, kde jste produkt zakoupili.

Estonian notice

Seadmete įtmete krvaldamine eramajapidamistes Euroopa Liidus



See tootel vi selle pakendil olev smbol nitab, et knealust toodet ei tohi koos teiste majapidamisjtmetega krvaldada. Teie kohus on oma seadmete jtmed krvaldada, viies need elektrija elektroonikaseadmete jtmete ringlussevtmiseks selleks ettenhtud kogumispunkti. Seadmete jtmete eraldi kogumine ja ringlussevtmine krvaldamise ajal aitab kaitsta loodusvarasid ning tagada, et ringlussevtmine toimub viisil, mis kaitseb inimeste tervist ning keskkonda. Lisateabe saamiseks selle kohta, kuhu oma seadmete jtmed ringlussevtmiseks viia, vtke palun hendust oma kohaliku linnakantselei, majapidamisjtmete krvaldamise teenistuse vi kauplusega, kust Te toote ostsite.

Finnish notice

Laitteiden hvittminen kotitalouksissa Euroopan unionin alueella



Jos tuotteessa tai sen pakkauksessa on tm merkki, tuotetta ei saa hvitt kotitalousjtteiden mukana. Tllin hvitettv laite on toimitettava shklaitteiden ja elektronisten laitteiden kierrtyspisteeseen. Hvitettvien laitteiden erillinen ksittely ja kierrtys auttavat sstmn luonnonvaroja ja varmistamaan, ett laite kierrtetn tavalla, joka est terveyshaitat ja suojelee luontoa. Listietoja paikoista, joihin hvitettvt laitteet voi toimittaa kierrtettvksi, saa ottamalla yhteytt jtehuoltoon tai liikkeeseen, josta tuote on ostettu.

French notice

limination des appareils mis au rebut par les mnages dans l'Union europenne



Le symbole appos sur ce produit ou sur son emballage indique que ce produit ne doit pas tre jet avec les dchets mnagers ordinaires. Il est de votre responsabilit de mettre au rebut vos appareils en les dposant dans les centres de collecte publique dsigns pour le recyclage des quipements lectriques et lectroniques. La collecte et le recyclage de vos appareils mis au rebut indpendamment du reste des dchets contribue la prservation des ressources naturelles et garantit que ces appareils seront recycls dans le respect de la sant humaine et de l'environnement. Pour obtenir plus d'informations sur les centres de collecte et de recyclage des appareils mis au rebut, veuillez contacter les autorits locales de votre rgion, les services de collecte des ordures mnagres ou le magasin dans lequel vous avez achet ce produit.

German notice

Entsorgung von Altgerten aus privaten Haushalten in der EU



Das Symbol auf dem Produkt oder seiner Verpackung weist darauf hin, dass das Produkt nicht ber den normalen Hausmll entsorgt werden darf. Benutzer sind verpflichtet, die Altgerte an einer Rcknahmestelle fr Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgerte abzugeben. Die getrennte Sammlung und ordnungsgeme Entsorgung Ihrer Altgerte trgt zur Erhaltung der natrlichen Ressourcen bei und garantiert eine Wiederverwertung, die die Gesundheit des Menschen und die Umwelt schtzt. Informationen dazu, wo Sie Rcknahmestellen fr Ihre Altgerte finden, erhalten Sie bei Ihrer Stadtverwaltung, den rtlichen Mllentsorgungsbetrieben oder im Geschft, in dem Sie das Gert erworben haben.

Greek notice

Απόρριψη άχρηστου εξοπλισμού από χρήστες σε ιδιωτικά νοικοκυριά στην Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση



Το σύμβολο αυτό στο προϊόν ή τη συσκευασία του υποδεικνύει ότι το συγκεκριμένο προϊόν δεν πρέπει να διατίθεται μαζί με τα άλλα οικιακά σας απορρίμματα. Αντίθετα, είναι δική σας ευθύνη να απορρίψετε τον άχρηστο εξοπλισμό σας παραδίδοντάς τον σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση άχρηστου ηλεκτρικού και ηλεκτρονικού εξοπλισμού. Η ξεχωριστή συλλογή και ανακύκλωση του άχρηστου εξοπλισμού σας κατά την απόρριψη θα συμβάλει στη διατήρηση των φυσικών πόρων και θα διασφαλίσει ότι η ανακύκλωση γίνεται με τρόπο που προστατεύει την ανθρώπινη υγεία και το περιβάλλον. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με το πού μπορείτε να παραδώσετε τον άχρηστο εξοπλισμό σας για ανακύκλωση, επικοινωνήστε με το αρμόδιο τοπικό γραφείο, την τοπική υπηρεσία διάθεσης οικιακών απορριμμάτων ή το κατάστημα όπου αγοράσατε το προϊόν.

Hungarian notice

Kszlkek magnhztartsban trtn? selejtezse az Eurpai Uni terletn



A kszlken, illetve a kszlk csomagolsn lthat azonos szimblum annak jelzsre szolgl, hogy a kszlk a selejtezs sorn az egyb hztartsi hulladktl eltr? mdon kezelend?. A vsrl a hulladkk vlt kszlket kteles a kijellt gy?jt?helyre szlltani az elektromos s elektronikai kszlkek jrahasznostsa cljbl. A hulladkk vlt kszlkek selejtezskori begy?jtse s jrahasznostsa hozzirul a termszeti er?forrsok meg?rzshez, valamint biztostja a selejtezett termkek krnyezetre s emberi egszsgre nzve biztonsgos feldolgozst. A begy?jts pontos helyr?l b?vebb tjkoztatst a lakhelye szerint illetkes nkormnyzattl, az illetkes szemteltakart vllalattl, illetve a termket elrust helyen kaphat.

Italian notice

Smaltimento delle apparecchiature da parte di privati nel territorio dellUnione Europea



Questo simbolo presente sul prodotto o sulla sua confezione indica che il prodotto non pu essere smaltito insieme ai rifiuti domestici. responsabilit dell'utente smaltire le apparecchiature consegnandole presso un punto di raccolta designato al riciclo e allo smaltimento di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche. La raccolta differenziata e il corretto riciclo delle apparecchiature da smaltire permette di proteggere la salute degli individui e l'ecosistema. Per ulteriori informazioni relative ai punti di raccolta delle apparecchiature, contattare l'ente locale per lo smaltimento dei rifiuti, oppure il negozio presso il quale stato acquistato il prodotto.

Latvian notice

Nolietotu iek?rtu izn?cin?anas noteikumi lietot?jiem Eiropas Savien?bas priv?taj?s m?jsaimniec?b?s



?ds simbols uz izstr?d?juma vai uz t? iesai?ojuma nor?da, ka o izstr?d?jumu nedr?kst izmest kop? ar citiem sadz?ves atkritumiem. J?s atbildat par to, lai nolietot?s iek?rtas tiktu nodotas speci?li iek?rtotos punktos, kas paredz?ti izmantoto elektrisko un elektronisko iek?rtu sav?kanai otrreiz?jai p?rstr?dei. Atsevi?a nolietoto iek?rtu sav?kana un otrreiz?j? p?rstr?de pal?dz?s saglab?t dabas resursus un garant?s, ka ?s iek?rtas tiks otrreiz?ji p?rstr?d?tas t?d? veid?, lai pasarg?tu vidi un cilv?ku vesel?bu. Lai uzzin?tu, kur nolietot?s iek?rtas var izmest otrreiz?jai p?rstr?dei, j?v?ras savas dz?ves vietas pavald?b?, sadz?ves atkritumu sav?kanas dienest? vai veikal?, kur? izstr?d?jums tika nopirkts.

Lithuanian notice

Vartotoj? i priva?i? nam? ?ki? ?rangos atliek? alinimas Europos S?jungoje



is simbolis ant gaminio arba jo pakuot?s rodo, kad io gaminio alinti kartu su kitomis nam? ?kio atliekomis negalima. alintinas ?rangos atliekas privalote pristatyti ? speciali? surinkimo viet? elektros ir elektronin?s ?rangos atliekoms perdirbti. Atskirai surenkamos ir perdirbamos alintinos ?rangos atliekos pad?s saugoti gamtinius iteklius ir utikrinti, kad jos bus perdirbtos tokiu b?du, kuris nekenkia moni? sveikatai ir aplinkai. Jeigu norite suinoti daugiau apie tai, kur galima pristatyti perdirbtinas ?rangos atliekas, kreipkit?s ? savo seni?nij?, nam? ?kio atliek? alinimo tarnyb? arba parduotuv?, kurioje ?sigijote gamin?.

Polish notice

Pozbywanie si? zu?ytego sprz?tu przez u?ytkownikw w prywatnych gospodarstwach domowych w Unii Europejskiej



Ten symbol na produkcie lub jego opakowaniu oznacza, ?e produktu nie wolno wyrzuca? do zwyk?ych pojemnikw na ?mieci. Obowi?zkiem u?ytkownika jest przekazanie zu?ytego sprz?tu do wyznaczonego punktu zbirki w celu recyklingu odpadw powsta?ych ze sprz?tu elektrycznego i elektronicznego. Osobna zbirka oraz recykling zu?ytego sprz?tu pomog? w ochronie zasobw naturalnych i zapewni? ponowne wprowadzenie go do obiegu w sposb chroni?cy zdrowie cz?owieka i ?rodowisko. Aby uzyska? wi?cej informacji o tym, gdzie mo?na przekaza? zu?yty sprz?t do recyklingu, nale?y si? skontaktowa? z urz?dem miasta, zak?adem gospodarki odpadami lub sklepem, w ktrym zakupiono produkt.

Portuguese notice

Descarte de Lixo Eltrico na Comunidade Europia



Este smbolo encontrado no produto ou na embalagem indica que o produto no deve ser descartado no lixo domstico comum. responsabilidade do cliente descartar o material usado (lixo eltrico), encaminhando-o para um ponto de coleta para reciclagem. A coleta e a reciclagem seletivas desse tipo de lixo ajudaro a conservar as reservas naturais; sendo assim, a reciclagem ser feita de uma forma segura, protegendo o ambiente e a sade das pessoas. Para obter mais informaes sobre locais que reciclam esse tipo de material, entre em contato com o escritrio da HP em sua cidade, com o servio de coleta de lixo ou com a loja em que o produto foi adquirido.

Slovakian notice

Likvidcia vyradench zariaden v domcnostiach v Eurpskej nii



Symbol na vrobku alebo jeho balen ozna?uje, e dan vrobok sa nesmie likvidova? s domovm odpadom. Povinnos?ou spotrebite?a je odovzda? vyraden zariadenie v zbernom mieste, ktor je ur?en na recyklciu vyradench elektrickch a elektronickch zariaden. Separovan zber a recyklcia vyradench zariaden prispieva k ochrane prrodnch zdrojov a zabezpe?uje, e recyklcia sa vykonva spsobom chrniacim ?udsk zdravie a ivotn prostredie. Informcie o zbernch miestach na recyklciu vyradench zariaden vm poskytne miestne zastupite?stvo, spolo?nos? zabezpe?ujca odvoz domovho odpadu alebo obchod, v ktorom ste si vrobok zakpili.

Slovenian notice

Odstranjevanje odsluene opreme uporabnikov v zasebnih gospodinjstvih v Evropski uniji



Ta znak na izdelku ali njegovi embalai pomeni, da izdelka ne smete odvre?i med gospodinjske odpadke. Nasprotno, odslueno opremo morate predati na zbirali?e, poobla?eno za recikliranje odsluene elektri?ne in elektronske opreme. Lo?eno zbiranje in recikliranje odsluene opreme prispeva k ohranjanju naravnih virov in zagotavlja recikliranje te opreme na zdravju in okolju nekodljiv na?in. Za podrobneje informacije o tem, kam lahko odpeljete odslueno opremo na recikliranje, se obrnite na pristojni organ, komunalno slubo ali trgovino, kjer ste izdelek kupili.

Spanish notice

Eliminacin de residuos de equipos elctricos y electrnicos por parte de usuarios particulares en la Unin Europea



Este smbolo en el producto o en su envase indica que no debe eliminarse junto con los desperdicios generales de la casa. Es responsabilidad del usuario eliminar los residuos de este tipo depositndolos en un "punto limpio" para el reciclado de residuos elctricos y electrnicos. La recogida y el reciclado selectivos de los residuos de aparatos elctricos en el momento de su eliminacin contribuir a conservar los recursos naturales y a garantizar el reciclado de estos residuos de forma que se proteja el medio ambiente y la salud. Para obtener ms informacin sobre los puntos de recogida de residuos elctricos y electrnicos para reciclado, pngase en contacto con su ayuntamiento, con el servicio de eliminacin de residuos domsticos o con el establecimiento en el que adquiri el producto.

Swedish notice

Bortskaffande av avfallsprodukter frn anvndare i privathushll inom Europeiska Unionen



Om den hr symbolen visas p produkten eller frpackningen betyder det att produkten inte fr slngas p samma stlle som hushllssopor. I stllet r det ditt ansvar att bortskaffa avfallet genom att verlmna det till ett uppsamlingsstlle avsett fr tervinning av avfall frn elektriska och elektroniska produkter. Separat insamling och tervinning av avfallet hjlper till att spara p vra naturresurser och gr att avfallet tervinns p ett stt som skyddar mnniskors hlsa och miljn. Kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, din nrmsta tervinningsstation fr hushllsavfall eller affren dr du kpte produkten fr att f mer information om var du kan Imna ditt avfall fr tervinning.

Germany noise declaration

Schalldruckpegel Lp = 70 dB(A) Am Arbeitsplatz (operator position) Normaler Betrieb (normal operation) Nach ISO 7779:1999 (Typprüfung)

Japanese notice

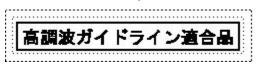
ご使用になっている装置にVCCIマークが付いていましたら、次の説明文を お読み下さい。

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会(VCCI)の基準 に基づくクラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境で使用すること を目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して 使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。 取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。

VCCIマークが付いていない場合には、次の点にご注意下さい。

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会(VCCI)の基準に 基づくクラスA情報技術装置です この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波 妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ず るよう要求されることがあります。

Harmonics conformance (Japan)



Taiwanese notice

警告使用者:

這是甲類的資訊產品,在居住的 環境中使用時,可能會造成射頻 干擾,在這種情況下,使用者會 被要求採取某些適當的對策。

Japanese power cord notice

製品には、同梱された電源コードをお使い下さい。 同梱された電源コードは、他の製品では使用出来ません。

Country-specific certifications

HP tests electronic products for compliance with country-specific regulatory requirements, as an individual item or as part of an assembly. The product label (see Figure 58) specifies the regulations with which the product complies.

NOTE:

Elements without an individual product certification label are qualified as part of the next higher assembly (for example, enclosure, rack, or tower).



CXO8157A

Figure 58 Typical enclosure certification label

NOTE:

The certification symbols on the label depend upon the certification level. For example, the FCC Class A certification symbol is not the same as the FCC Class B certification symbol.

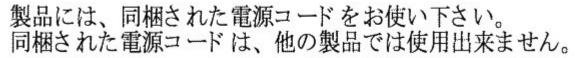
About countryspecific regulations

HP tests electronic products for compliance with countryspecific regulatory requirements, as an individual item or as part of an assembly. The product label specifies the regulations with which the product complies.

NOTE:

Elements without an individual product certification label are qualified as part of the *next higher* assembly (for example, enclosure, rack, or tower). The certification symbols on the label depend upon the certification level. For example, the FCC Class A certification symbol is not the same as the FCC Class B certification symbol.

Japanese cord caution statement



translation Please use the attached power cord. The attached power cord is not allowed to use with other product.

Figure 59 Japanese cord caution

Fibre Channel drive enclosure specifications

This appendix defines the physical, environmental, and power specifications of the Fibre Channel disk drive enclosure and elements.

Physical specifications

This section describes the physical specifications of the drive enclosure and elements.

\triangle CAUTION:

An assembled enclosure (all elements installed) weighs more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg) and requires a minimum of two individuals to move.

Table 30 Drive enclosure physical specifications

	Empty	Installed	Shipping	
			Carton	Carton & pallet
Height	131 mm (5.16 in)	131 mm (5.16 in)	641 mm (25.25 in)	768 mm (30.25 in)
Width	505 mm (19.875 in)	505 mm (19.875 in)	318 mm (12.5 in)	610 mm (24 in)
Depth	448 mm (17.625 in)	448 mm (17.625 in)	597 mm (23.5 in)	1016 mm (40 in)
Weight	10.9 kg (24 lb)	30.9 kg (68 lb)	43.6 kg (96 lb)	49 kg (108 lb)

NOTE:

Metric dimensions are expressed in whole numbers. For example, 10.795 cm is expressed as 108 mm. Millimeter dimensions are always expressed in whole numbers.

Table 31 defines the dimensions of the elements (that is, EMU, blowers, I/O module, drives, and power supply).

Specification	Installed	Shipping Carton		
Environmental Monitoring Unit (EMU)				
Height	114 mm (4.5 in)	210 mm (8.25 in)		
Width	241 mm (9.5 in)	330 mm (13.5 in)		
Depth	35 mm (1.375 in)	108 mm (4.25 in)		
Weight	0.6 kg (1.3 lb)	0.91 lb (2.0 lb)		
Blower				
Height	140 mm (5.5 in)	191 mm (7.5 in)		
Width	159 mm (6.25 in)	203 mm (8.0 in)		
Depth	83 mm (3.25 in)	229 mm (9.0 in)		
Weight	0.45 kg (1.0 lb)	0.91 kg (2.0 lb)		
I/O Module				
Height	114 mm (4.5 in)	210 mm (8.25 in)		
Width	41 mm (1.625 in)	108 mm (4.25 in)		
Depth	241 mm (9.5 in)	330 mm (13.0 in)		
Weight	0.59 kg (1.3 lb)	0.77 kg (1.7 lb)		
Disk Drive				
Height	114 mm (4.5 in)	216 mm (8.5 in)		
Width	26 mm (1.025 in)	114 mm (4.5 in)		
Depth	241 mm (9.5 in)	330 mm (13.0 in)		
Weight	0.59 kg (1.3 lb)	1.0 kg (2.3 lb)		
Power Supply (without blower)			
Height	114 mm (4.5 in)	286 mm (11.25 in)		
Width	159 mm (6.25 in)	330 mm (13.0 in)		
Depth	241 mm (9.5 in)	419 mm (16.5 in)		
Weight	1.82 kg (4.0 lb)	3.86 kg (8.5 lb)		

Table 31 Drive enclosure elements physical specifications

NOTE:

Metric dimensions are expressed in whole numbers. For example, 10.795 cm is expressed as 108 mm. Millimeter dimensions are always expressed in whole numbers.

Environmental specifications

To ensure optimum product operation you must maintain the operational environmental specifications listed in Table 32. The ambient temperature, that is the enclosure air intake or room temperature, is especially critical.

Table 32 Environmental operating specifications

Ambient temperature : +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F) with an average rate of change of 1 °C/hour maximum and a step change of 3 °C or less. Maintaining the optimum ambient temperature within the specified range ensures that the internal operating temperatures support the drive manufacturer's MTBF specifications.
Relative humidity: 40% to 60% (noncondensing) with a step change of 10% or less (noncondensing)
Air quality: Not to exceed a maximum of 500,000 particles, 0.5 micron or larger, per cubic foot of air.
Heat dissipation: 1600 BTUs per hour

When shipping, or placing this product in short term storage, HP recommends maintaining the environmental conditions listed in Table 33.

Table 33 Environmental shipping or short-term storage specifications

Ambient temperature : -40 °C to +66 °C (-40 °F to +151 °F)		
Relative humidity: 10% to 80% noncondensing		
Altitude: below 15,240 m (50,000 ft)		

Power specifications

The input voltage to the drive enclosure power supplies is a function of the country-specific input voltage to Enterprise storage system rack power distribution units (PDUs). Table 34 defines the AC input power available to the drive enclosure power supplies.

\triangle CAUTION:

The AC power distribution within a rack ensures a balanced to each PDA and reduces the possibility of an overload condition. Changing the cabling to or from a PDM could cause an overload condition.

Table 34 Enterprise storage system AC input line voltages

Specification	Minimal	Nominal	Maximum
	60 Hz Service		
AC Line Voltage	57 Hz	60 Hz	63 Hz
AC Line Voltage—Japan	180 VAC	202 VAC	220 VAC
AC Line Voltage–North America	180 VAC	208 VAC	220 VAC
AC Line Voltage-Europe	208 VAC	240 VAC	254 VAC
	50 Hz Service		
AC Line Frequency	47 Hz	50 Hz	53 Hz
AC Line Voltage-Japan	180 VAC	202 VAC	220 VAC
AC Line Voltage–North America	190 VAC	220 VAC	235 VAC
AC Line Voltage–North America	200 VAC	230 VAC	244 VAC
AC Line Voltage–Europe	208 VAC	240 VAC	254 VAC

Table 35 defines the AC input current and wattage to the drive enclosure power supplies.

Table 35 AC input current and wattage

Nominal		Maximum				
Input Voltage	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts		
	60–Hz Input					
100 VAC-JBOD	4.35	436	6.41	641		
208 VAC–North America	2.03	419	2.94	609		
50–Hz Input						
120 VAC-JBOD	3.59	419	5.27	633		
220 VAC–North America	1.92	418	2.78	608		
230 VAC–North America	1.92	418	2.78	608		
240 VAC-Europe	1.76	416	2.55	607		

Table 36 and Table 37 define the output voltage and current specifications of the power supply

Table 36 Output voltage and current specifications

		Range	
Specification	Minimum	Nominal	Maximum
	-	+5.1 VDC	
Initial VoltageSteady state current	+5.13 VDC1.0 A	+5.18 VDCN/A	+5.23 VDC26.0 A
	+12.2 VDC	(Disk Drive Voltage)	
Initial VoltageSteady state current	+12.13 VDC1.0 A	+12.25 VDCN/A	+12.37 VDC26.0 A
+12.5 VDC (Disk Drive Voltage)			
Initial VoltageSteady state current	+12.25 VDC0.0 0A	+12.50 VDCN/A	+12.75 VDC2.0 A

Table 37 Dual power supply configuration power specifications

Voltage	Current (A)	Power (W)
Maximum continuou		
+5.1 VDC (with a minimum +12.2 VDC load of 0A) +12.2 VDC (with a minimum +5 VDC load of 4A) +12.5 VDC	26.0 A 28.0 A 2.0 A	132 W342.0 W25.0 W
	Total	499.0 W
Maximum peak current (simultaneous seek activity)		
+5.1 VDC +12.2 VDC +12.5 VDC	26.0 A 43.0 A 2.0 A	132.0 W 524.0 W 25.0 W
	Total	681.0 W

Fibre Channel switch specifications

The Fibre Channel Switch requires a clean, dry environment for normal operation. Table 38 lists the specifications for the Fibre Channel Switch.

Table 38 Fibre Channel switch specifications

Category	Measurement		
Weight	approximately 7.5 lbs.		
Dimensions	$8.50 \ x \ 1.57 \ x \ 16.00$ in (W x H x D) the switch with extender is 21.66 in D		
Operating Temperature	0 °C to 40 °C for normal operation (ambient air temperature)		
Storage Temperature	-40 °C to 80 °C noncondensing		
Power	50 or 60 Hz 100–250 VAC 0.5–0.3 A		

Controller specifications

This section defines the physical, power, and environmental specifications of the Controller enclosure.

Physical specifications

??? defines the dimensions of the controller.

Table 39 Controller enclosure physical specifications

Specification	Installed	Shipping
Height	62 mm (2.45 in)	267 mm (10.5 in)
Width	502 mm (19.56 in)	762 mm (30 in)
Depth	444 mm (17.49 in)	762 mm (30 in)
Weight	10.4 kg (23 lb)	12.7 kg (28 lb)

₿ NOTE:

Metric dimensions are expressed in whole numbers. For example, 10.795 cm is expressed as 108 mm.

Power specifications

Table 40 and Table 37 define the HSV110 Controller power supply input power requirements and output power specifications.

Table 40 Controller power supply AC power requirements

AC input voltage			Frequency		
Minimum	Nominal	Maximum	Minimum	Nominal	Maximum
180 VAC	202 VAC	220 VAC	47 Hz	50 Hz	53 Hz
	208 VAC		57 Hz	60 Hz	63 Hz
208 VAC	240 VAC	254 VAC			

Table 41 defines the AC input current and wattage to the controller power supplies.

Table 41 AC input current and wattage

Nominal	Maximum			
Input voltage	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts
60-Hz Input				
100 VAC-JBOD	4.35	436	6.41	641
208 VAC–North America	2.03	419	2.94	609
50-Hz Input				
120 VAC-JBOD	3.59	419	5.27	633
220 VAC–North America	1.92	418	2.78	608
230 VAC–North America	1.92	418	2.78	608
240 VAC–Europe	1.76	416	2.55	607

Table 42 Controller power supply output specifications

Voltage Specification	Minimum	Nominal	Maximum
+3.3 VDC			
Output VoltageSteady state current Power	3.23 VDC	3.30 VDC	3.36 VDC 18 A ¹ 59.4W
+5.0 VDC			
Output Voltage Steady state current Power	4.90 VDC	5.00 VDC	5.10 VDC 4 A 20.0W
+12.0 VDC			
Output Voltage Steady state current Power	11.4 VDC	12.0 VDC	12.6 VDC 2 A 4.0W
Total Current Total Power			24 A 65.4W
1			•

1+3.3 VDC steady state current requires a minimum 5.0-V load of 1 A.

Environmental specifications

There are no controller environmental specifications. See the Rack environmental specifications for this information in the next section.

Rack

Physical specifications

▲ WARNING!

The weight of the drive enclosure with the elements installed always requires at least two individuals to move. HP recommends using a fork lift or a hand truck to move an enclosure in the shipping container.

Table 43 through Table 48 define the dimensions and weights of the 9000-Series and 10000-SeriesEnterprise Virtual Array racks.

Table 43 9000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Physical Dimensions

Configuration	Height in / mm	Width in / mm	Depth in / mm	Max Wt lbs / kg
Enterprise 2C6D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	35.8 / 909	918 / 416
Enterprise 2C12D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	35.8 / 909	1350 / 612
Enterprise 0C6D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	35.8 / 909	818 / 371
Enterprise 0C12D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	35.8 / 909	1250 / 567

Table 44 9000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Shipping Dimensions

Configuration	Height in / mm	Width in / mm	Depth in / mm	Max Wt (packaging) Ibs / kg
Enterprise 2C6D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1111 / 504
Enterprise 2C12D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1543 / 700
Enterprise 0C6D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1011 / 459
Enterprise 0C12D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1443 / 654

Table 45 9000-Series Enterprise 41U Rack Physical Dimensions

Configuration	Height in / mm	Width in / mm	Depth in / mm	Max Wt lbs / kg
Enterprise 2C6D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	39.1 / 993	917 / 416
Enterprise 2C12D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	39.1 / 993	1349 / 612
Enterprise 0C6D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	39.1 / 993	817 / 371
Enterprise 0C12D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 602	39.1 / 993	1249 / 567

Table 46 9000-Series Enterprise 41U Rack Shipping Dimensions

Configuration	Height in / mm	Width in / mm	Depth in / mm	Max Wt (packaging) Ibs / kg
Enterprise 2C6D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1110 / 503
Enterprise 2C12D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1542 / 699
Enterprise 0C6D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1010 / 458
Enterprise 0C12D	85.38 / 2169	36.0 / 914	48.0 / 1220	1442 / 654

Table 47 10000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Physical Dimensions

Configuration	Height in / mm	Width in / mm	Depth in / mm	Max Wt lbs / kg
Enterprise 2C6D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 600	39.3 / 1000	918 / 416
Enterprise 2C12D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 600	39.3 / 1000	1350 / 612
Enterprise 0C6D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 600	39.3 / 1000	818 / 371
Enterprise 0C12D	78.75 / 2000.0	23.7 / 600	39.3 / 1000	1250 / 567

Configurations	Height in / mm	Width in / mm	Depth in / mm	Max Wt (packaging) Ibs / kg
Enterprise 2C6D	86.22 / 2190	32.0 / 813	48.0 / 1220	1111 / 504
Enterprise 2C12D	86.22 / 2190	32.0 / 813	48.0 / 1220	1543 / 700
Enterprise 0C6D	86.22 / 2190	32.0 / 813	48.0 / 1220	1011 / 459
Enterprise 0C12D	86.22 / 2190	32.0 / 813	48.0 / 1220	1443 / 654

Table 48 10000-Series Enterprise 42U Rack Shipping Dimensions

Environmental specifications

To ensure optimum product operation, you must maintain the operational environmental specifications listed in Table 49. The ambient temperature (the enclosure air intake or room temperature) is especially critical.

Table 49 Environmental operating specifications

Ambient temperature: +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F) with an average rate of change of 1 °C/hour maximum and a step change of 3 °C or less. Maintaining the optimum ambient temperature within the specified range ensures that the internal operating temperatures support the drive manufacturer's MTBF specifications.

Relative humidity: 40% to 60% (noncondensing) with a step change of 10% or less (noncondensing).

Air quality: Not to exceed a maximum of 500,000 particles, 0.5 micron or larger, per cubic foot of air.

Heat dissipation: 12,708 BTUs per hour.

When shipping, or placing this product in short term storage, HP recommends maintaining the environmental conditions listed in Table 50.

Table 50 Environmental shipping or short term storage specifications

Ambient temperature: -40 °C to +66 °C (-40 °F to +151 °F)

Relative humidity: 10% to 80% (noncondensing)

Altitude: below 15,240 m (50,000 ft)

Power specifications

Table 51 defines the AC power specifications for the Enterprise Virtual Array PDUs, PDMs, drive enclosure power supplies, and controller enclosure power supplies.

Nominal input voltage	Specifications			
	60-Hz Service			
202 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	Japan 180-220 VAC, 57-63Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, IEC 309			
208 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	North America 180-220 VAC, 57-63Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, NEMA L6-30			
240 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	Europe 208-254 VAC, 57-63 Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, IEC 309			
	50-Hz Service			
202 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	Japan 180-220 VAC, 47-63Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, IEC 309			
220 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	North America 190-235 VAC, 47-63Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, NEMA L6-30			
230 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	North America 200-244 VAC, 47-63Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, NEMA L6-30			
240 VAC Voltage Range Power Receptacle	Europe 208-254 VAC, 57-63 Hz, 32 A, Single Phase 3-wire, 2-pole, IEC 309			

The power consumption of an Enterprise Virtual Array is 3,724 W.

B EMU generated condition reports

This section provides a description of the EMU generated condition reports that contain the following information:

- Element type (et), a hexadecimal number in the range 01 through FF.
- Element number (*en*), a decimal number in the range 00 through 99 that defines a probable cause of the problem.
- Error code (ec), a decimal number in the range 00 through 99.
- The recommended corrective action.

NOTE:

The conventions used to differentiate between the elements of the condition report are:

- The element type has a period after each character.
- The element number has a period after the second character.
- The error code has no periods.

The EMU can send error messages to the controller for transmission to the Command View EVA graphical user interface (GUI). The messages displayed are specific to Command View EVA and are not within the scope of this publication.

This appendix explains the condition report format, correcting problems, and how to identify element types. The error codes are arranged in element type sequence (that is, 0.1., 0.2., 0.3., etc).

Condition report format

When the EMU alphanumeric display is Er, there are additional displays that identify the element type, the specific element, and the error code, which defines the possible cause of the problem.

- The first-level display defines the type of element affected with two alphanumeric characters separated by periods such as 0.1., 0.2., 1.3., F.F., and so forth. A disk drive problem would display an element type number of 0.1.
- The second-level display defines the element affected with a two-digit, decimal number followed by a period. For example, when a bay 6 drive error occurs, the element number display is 06.; a display of 14. indicates a bay 14 problem.
- The third-level display defines a specific problem, the error code with a two-digit, decimal number. For example, should the problem be either the installation of an incorrectly configured drive or one that cannot operate at the loop link rate, the display is 01.

Correcting errors

Correcting an error may require you to perform a specific set of actions. In some cases, the only available corrective action is to replace the element.

??? lists the element type codes assigned to the drive enclosure elements. Elements that do not have an active condition report are shaded.

Code	Element
0.1.	Disk Drives (see Drive Conditions)
0.2.	Power Supplies (see Figure 30)
0.3.	Blowers (see Figure 30)
0.4.	Temperature Sensors (see Table 53)
0.6	Audible Alarm 1
0.7.	EMU
0.C.	Controller OCP LCD1
0.F.	Transceivers (see Figure 63)
1.0.	Language ¹
1.1.	Communication Port ¹
1.2.	Voltage Sensors (see Table 54)
1.	Current Sensors (see Table 54)
8.0	Drive Enclosure ¹
8.2.	Drive Enclosure Backplane
8.7.	I/O Modules (see I/O module B and I/O module A)
1	

Table 52 Assigned element type codes

¹A shaded element does not generate a condition report. However, for any error, you should record the error code. Then, implement the recommended corrective action.

Drive conditions

The format of a disk drive condition report is 0.1.en.ec, where:

- 0.1. is the disk drive element type number
- en. is the two-character disk drive element
- ec is the error code

A direct correlation exists between the disk drive element number and the bay number. However, no direct correlation exists between the disk drive bay number and the device FC-AL physical address. The FC-AL physical address is assigned by negotiation during system initialization.

The following sections define the disk drive error codes.

0.1.en.01 CRITICAL condition—Drive configuration or drive link rate

As each drive spins up and comes on-line, the EMU determines if the drive is Fibre Channel compatible and can operate at the link rate (1Gbps or 2Gbps) established by the I/O module. If either of these conditions are not met, the EMU issues the condition report 0.1.en.01.

The corrective actions for these conditions are:

- When the drive is not Fibre Channel-compatible you must install a Fibre Channel compatible drive or a drive blank.
- When the drive is Fibre Channel-compatible, the EMU compares the drive link rate with the I/O module link rate, the loop link rate.

If the EMU cannot determine the drive link rate, the EMU activates the drive bypass function for one minute. During this time the EMU continually checks the drive to determine the link rate.

- If the EMU determines the drive cannot operate at the Fibre Channel link rate set by the I/O module, the drive bypass function ends and the drive is placed on the loop. This does not generate a condition report.
- The EMU issues the condition report 0.1.en.01 when the drive link rate is incompatible with Fibre Channel link rate.
- When the EMU cannot determine the drive link rate during the one-minute drive bypass time, the EMU places the drive on the loop. This process allows the drive to negotiate for an address.
 - If negotiation indicates the link rates are compatible, the EMU rechecks the drive link rate to verify compatibility.
 - If negotiation indicates the link rates are incompatible, an error condition exists and drive loop data transfers stop.

This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected. The problem affects disk drive en. Therefore, correction to prevent the possible failure of other elements is not required.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- **2.** Replace the defective drive with:
 - A Fibre Channel-compatible drive.
 - A Fibre Channel drive capable of operating at a link rate supported by I/O modules and transceivers.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If unable to correct the problem, contact your authorized service representative.

0.1.en.02 INFORMATION condition—Drive missing

The drive is improperly installed or missing. Either option could affect the enclosure air flow and cause an overtemperature condition for another element.

- This error remains active for one minute, or until the problem is corrected, whichever occurs first.
- Immediate correction is not required. However, correction cannot be delayed indefinitely.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem.

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Remove and install the drive to ensure that it is properly installed.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- **4.** If removing and installing the drive did not correct the problem, install a replacement drive or a drive blank.
- 5. Observe the EMU to ensue the error is corrected.
- 6. If unable to correct the problem, contact your authorized service representative.

0.1.en.03 INFORMATION condition—Drive software lock active

Some enclosures have a software-activated lock that prevents physically removing a drive while this feature is active. This feature can be activated even when an enclosure does not have a physical lock. Removing a drive when this feature is active generates a condition report. This error remains active for 15 seconds.

No action is required to correct this condition.

0.1.en.04 CRITICAL condition—Loop A drive link Rate incorrect

The drive is capable of operating at the loop link rate, but is running at a different rate. For example, the drive is operating at 1Gbps, and the loop is operating at 2Gbps. Only when the drive is operating at the Fibre Channel link rate established by the I/O module can this drive transfer data.

This error remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Remove and replace the drive in the enclosure.
- 3. Observe the drive status LEDs to ensure the drive is operational.
- 4. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 5. If removing and replacing the drive did not correct the problem, replace the drive.
- 6. Observe the drive status LEDs to ensure the drive is operational.
- 7. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 8. If unable to correct the problem, contact your authorized service representative.

0.1.en.05 CRITICAL condition—Loop B drive link rate incorrect

The drive is capable of operating at the loop link rate but is running at a different rate. For example, the drive is operating at 1Gbps, and the loop is operating at 2Gbps. Only when the drive is operating at the Fibre Channel link rate established by the I/O module can this drive transfer data.

This error remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Remove and replace the drive in the enclosure.
- 3. Observe the drive status LEDs to ensure the drive is operational.
- 4. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 5. If removing and replacing the drive did not correct the problem, replace the drive.
- 6. Observe the drive status LEDs to ensure the drive is operational.
- 7. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 8. If unable to correct the problem, contact your authorized service representative.

Power supply conditions

The format of a power supply condition report is 0.2.en.ec, where:

- 0.2. is the power supply element type number
- en. is the two-character power supply element number
- ec is the error code

Figure 60 shows the location of power supply 1 and power supply 2.

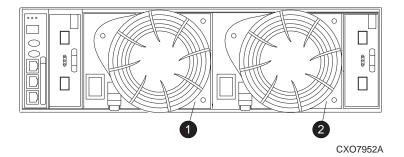


Figure 60 Power supply element numbering

The following sections define the power supply condition reports.

0.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—Power Supply AC Input Missing

The loss of the AC input to a power supply makes the remaining power supply a single point of failure.

This condition report remains active until AC power is applied to the power supply.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- Ensure that there is AC power to the rack PDU, and from the PDU to the PDMs and that the PDU and PDM circuit breakers are not reset.

If there is no AC power to the PDU, contact building facilities management.

Verify that the power supply AC power cord is properly connected.

- **3.** If AC is present, and the rack power distribution circuitry is functioning properly, the power supply LED should be on.
- 4. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 5. Contact your authorized service representative.

0.2.en.02 UNRECOVERABLE Condition—Power Supply Missing

This condition report indicates a power supply is not installed or installed incorrectly. Both of these conditions affect air flow within the enclosure and can cause an overtemperature condition. Enclosure shutdown is imminent.

The operational power supply will automatically shut down after seven minutes, thereby disabling the enclosure. This condition report remains active until either the problem is corrected, or the operational power supply shuts down, whichever occurs first.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your authorized service representative.

\triangle **CAUTION**:

Removing power from an enclosure may cause the loss or corruption of data. To avoid this condition, shut down the system using Command View EVA. An automatic shutdown and possible data corruption may result if the power supply is removed before a replacement is available.

0.2.en.03 CRITICAL Condition—Power Supply Load Unbalanced

This condition report indicates that a component within a power supply may have failed. This can make the remaining power supply a single point of failure.

This condition report remains active until corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Ensure that the blower on the power supply is functioning properly. If not, correct the blower condition and wait one minute.
- 3. Contact your authorized service representative.

Blower conditions

The format of a blower condition report is 0.3.en.ec, where:

- 0.3. is the blower element type number
- en. is the two-character blower element number
- ec is the error code

As shown in Figure 61, blower 1 is in location 1 and blower 2 is in location 2.

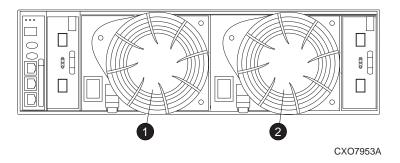


Figure 61 Blower element numbering

\triangle CAUTION:

A single blower operating at high speed can provide sufficient air flow to cool an enclosure and the elements for up to 100 hours. However, operating an enclosure at temperatures approaching an overheating threshold can damage elements and may reduce the MTBF of a specific element. Immediate replacement of the defective blower is required.

The following sections define the power supply condition reports.

0.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower speed

A blower is operating at a speed outside of the EMU specified range, possibly because of a bearing problem. This can affect enclosure cooling and cause an element to fail. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

This error does not normally require immediate correction. However, an error of this type could contribute to an element overheating.

HP recommends replacing the blower as soon as possible.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.3.en.02 CRITICAL condition—Blower speed

A blower is operating at a speed that is significantly outside the EMU specified range, possibly because of a bearing problem. This can cause the loss of cooling and cause an element to fail. The error remains active until the problem is corrected.

HP recommends replacing the blower as soon as possible.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your authorized service representative.

0.3.en.03 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower failure

A blower has stopped. The operational blower now operates at high speed and is a single point of failure. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your authorized service representative.

0.3.en.04 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Blower internal

A power supply reported an internal blower error that could affect enclosure cooling and cause an element to fail. HP recommends correcting the problem before the blower fails. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.3.en.05 NONCRITICAL condition—Blower missing

A blower has been removed or is improperly installed. Even though the blower flaps close to maintain the proper air flow, the reduced cooling capability can cause overheating, causing an element to fail. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.3.en.06 UNRECOVERABLE condition—No blowers installed

PNOTE:

IMPORTANT

When this condition exists there will be two error messages.

The first message will be 0.3.en.05 and will identify the first blower.

The second message will be 0.3.en.06 and will identify the second blower.

The EMU cannot detect any installed blowers. *Shutdown is imminent!* The EMU will shut down the enclosure in *seven minutes* unless you correct the problem. This condition report remains active until you correct the problem or the EMU shuts down the power supplies, whichever occurs first.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem.

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Use the controller shutdown procedure to shut down the controllers.
- 3. Contact your authorized service representative.

\triangle CAUTION:

An automatic shutdown and possible data corruption may result if the blower is removed before a replacement is available.

Temperature conditions

The format of a temperature condition report is 0.4.en.ec, where:

• 0.4. is temperature sensor element type

- en. is the two-character temperature sensor element
- ec is the error code

Refer to Table 53 to determine the location of each temperature sensor.

Sensor	Sensor location	Sensor	Sensor location
01.	Power Supply 1 Exhaust	10.	Drive Bay 7
02.	Power Supply 2 Exhaust	11.	Drive Bay 8
03.	EMU	12.	Drive Bay 9
04.	Drive Bay 1	13.	Drive Bay 10
05.	Drive Bay 2	14.	Drive Bay 11
06.	Drive Bay 3	15.	Drive Bay 12
07.	Drive Bay 4	16.	Drive Bay 13
08.	Drive Bay 5	17.	Drive Bay 14
09.	Drive Bay 6		

Table 53 Temperature sensor element numbering

The following sections list the temperature condition reports and the default temperature thresholds. Use Command View EVA to view the temperature sensor ranges for the disk drives, EMU, and power supplies.

0.4.en.01 NONCRITICAL condition—High temperature

This condition report indicates that an element temperature is approaching, but has not reached, the high temperature CRITICAL threshold. Continued operation under these conditions may result in a CRITICAL condition. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem.

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Ensure that all elements are properly installed to maintain proper air flow.
- 3. Ensure that nothing is obstructing the air flow at either the front of the enclosure or the rear of the blower.
- 4. Ensure that both blowers are operating properly (the LEDs are on) and neither blower is operating at high speed.
- 5. Verify that the ambient temperature range is +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F). Adjust as necessary.
- 6. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 7. If unable to correct the problem, contact your authorized service representative.

0.4.en.02 CRITICAL condition—High temperature

This condition report indicates that an element temperature is above the high temperature CRITICAL threshold. Continued operation under these conditions may result in element failure and may reduce an element MTBF. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Ensure that all elements are properly installed to maintain proper air flow.
- **3.** Ensure that nothing is obstructing the air flow at either the front of the enclosure or the rear of the blower.

- 4. Ensure that both blowers are operating properly (the LEDs are on) and neither blower is operating at high speed.
- 5. Verify that the ambient temperature range is +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F). Adjust as necessary.
- 6. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 7. If unable to correct the problem, contact your authorized service representative.

0.4.en.03 NONCRITICAL condition—Low temperature

This condition report indicates that an element temperature is approaching, but has not reached, the low temperature CRITICAL threshold. Continued operation under these conditions may result in a CRITICAL condition. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem.

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Verify that the ambient temperature range is +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F). Adjust as necessary.
- **3.** Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- **4.** If the <u>ambient temperature</u> is correct and the problem persists, contact your Authorized Service Representative.

0.4.en.04 CRITICAL condition—Low temperature

This condition report indicates that an element temperature has reached the low temperature CRITICAL threshold. HP recommends correcting this error to prevent affecting other elements. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Verify that the ambient temperature range is +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F). Adjust as necessary.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If the ambient temperature is correct and the problem persists, contact your authorized service representative.

0.4.en.05 UNRECOVERABLE condition—High temperature

This condition report indicates that the EMU has evaluated the temperature of the three temperature groups (EMU, disk drives, and power supplies), and determined that the average temperature of two of the three groups exceeds the critical level (use Command View EVA to view the temperature thresholds). Under these conditions the EMU starts a timer that will automatically shut down the enclosure in seven minutes unless you correct the problem. *Enclosure shutdown is imminent!*

\triangle CAUTION:

An automatic shutdown and possible data corruption may result if the procedure below is not performed immediately.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Ensure that all disk drives, I/O modules, and power supply elements are fully seated.
- 2. Ensure that all blowers are operating properly.
- Verify that the ambient temperature range is +10 °C to +35 °C (+50 °F to +95 °F). Adjust as necessary.

- **4.** If Steps 1, 2 or 3 did not reveal a problem, use Command View EVA to request the HSV110 controller to shut down the drive enclosure. Completing this action will halt the drive enclosure data transfers.
- 5. Contact your authorized service representative and request assistance.

EMU conditions

The format of an EMU condition report is 0.7.01.ec, where:

- 0.7. is the EMU element type number
- 01. is the two-character EMU element number
- ec is the error code

NOTE:

IMPORTANT

There is only one EMU in a drive enclosure. Therefore, the element number is always 01.

Resetting the EMU

In some cases, the only corrective action for an EMU error is to replace the EMU. Call your authorized service representative if this action is required. Another option is to reset the EMU using the following procedure:

1. Firmly grasp the EMU mounting handle and pull the EMU partially out of the enclosure.

NOTE:

IMPORTANT

You do not need to remove the EMU from the enclosure, nor to disconnect the cables. You must avoid putting any strain on the cables or connectors.

2. Wait 30 seconds, and then push the EMU in and fully seat the element in the backplane. The EMU should display any enclosure condition report within two minutes.

07.01.01 CRITICAL condition—EMU internal clock

There is an internal EMU clock error that will remain active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- **3.** If resetting the EMU did not correct the problem, replace the EMU.
- 4. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 5. If unable to correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

07.01.02 UNRECOVERABLE condition—EMU interrupted

The Inter-IC (I2C) bus is not processing data and the EMU is unable to monitor or report the status of the elements or enclosures. *IMMEDIATE* corrective action is required to ensure proper enclosure operation. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure NOW to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.

- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If resetting the EMU did not correct the problem, replace the EMU.
- 5. If unable to correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.03 UNRECOVERABLE Condition—Power supply shutdown

This message only appears on the Command View EVA GUI to report a power supply has already shut down. This message can be the result of the controller shutdown command or an EMU or power supply initiated power shutdown.

This message cannot be displayed until after restoration of power. Therefore, there is no corrective action required.

0.7.01.04 INFORMATION condition—EMU internal data

The EMU is unable to collect data for the SCSI-3 Engineering Services (SES) page. This condition report remains active for 15 seconds. The condition report affects only internal EMU operations. There is no degradation of enclosure operations.

The EMU initiates automatic recovery procedures.

If the problem is not automatically corrected after one minute, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.05 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Backplane NVRAM

NOTE:

IMPORTANT

Backplane NVRAM errors usually occur during manufacture. At this time they are identified and corrected. They rarely occur during normal operation.

When a backplane NVRAM is not programmed or cannot be read by the EMU, there is no communication with the disk drives. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- **2.** Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If resetting the EMU did not correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.10 NONCRITICAL condition—NVRAM invalid read data

The data read from the EMU NVRAM is invalid. This error initiates an automatic recovery process. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

If the automatic recovery process does not correct the problem, complete the following procedure:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If resetting the enclosure did not correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.11 NONCRITICAL condition—EMU NVRAM write failure

The EMU cannot write data to the NVRAM. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If resetting the enclosure did not correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.12 NONCRITICAL condition—EMU cannot read NVRAM data

The EMU is unable to read data from the NVRAM. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If resetting the enclosure did not correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.13 UNRECOVERABLE condition—EMU load failure

The EMU Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA) that controls the ESI bus failed to load information required for EMU operation. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 4. If resetting the enclosure did not correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.14 NONCRITICAL condition—EMU enclosure address

Either the enclosure address is incorrect or the enclosure has no address. Possible causes include a defective enclosure address bus cable, an incorrectly connected cable, or a defective enclosure address bus JB. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Remove and reconnect the cable between the address bus JB and the EMU.

NOTE:

The EMU display may not display a change in condition for up to 30 seconds.

- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- If the problem is not corrected, remove and reinstall the bottom and top terminators, and all the JB-to-JB cables.

- 5. Observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 6. Reset the EMU, then observe the EMU to ensure the error is corrected.
- 7. If resetting the EMU did not correct the problem, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.7.01.15 UNRECOVERABLE condition—EMU hardware failure

The EMU has detected an internal hardware problem. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error does not recur within the first minute.
- 4. If the error does recur, contact your HP authorized service representative. The EMU is inoperative and must be replaced as soon as possible.

0.7.01.16 INFORMATION condition—EMU internal ESI data corrupted

The EMU ESI data is corrupted. This condition does not affect any other element and no action is required.

0.7.01.17 UNRECOVERABLE condition—Power shutdown failure

The power supply did not respond to a controller, EMU, or power supply shut down command. Shutting down the supply is required to prevent overheating.

Complete the following procedure to correct the problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Move the power cord bail lock 1, Figure 62, to the left.
- 3. Disconnect the AC power cord 2 from the supply.

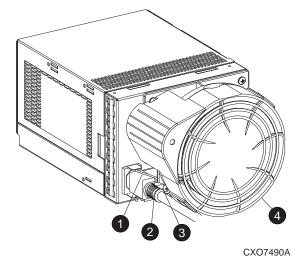


Figure 62 Disconnecting AC power

0.7.01.18 UNRECOVERABLE condition—EMU hardware failure

The EMU has detected an internal hardware problem. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error does not recur within the first minute.
- 4. If the error does recur, contact your HP authorized service representative. The EMU is inoperative and must be replaced as soon as possible.

0.7.01.19 UNRECOVERABLE condition—EMU ESI driver failure

The EMU has detected an internal hardware problem. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Reset the EMU.
- 3. Observe the EMU to ensure the error does not recur within the first minute.
- 4. If the error does recur, contact your HP authorized service representative. The EMU is inoperative and must be replaced as soon as possible.

Transceiver conditions

The format of a transceiver condition report is O.F.en.ec, where:

- 0.F. is the transceiver element type number
- en. is the two-character transceiver element number (see Figure 63)
- ec is the error code

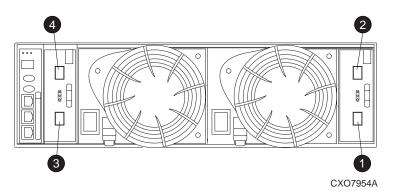


Figure 63 Transceiver element numbering

- 1. Transceiver 01
- 2. Transceiver 02
- **3.** Transceiver 03
- 4. Transceiver 04

0.F.en.01 CRITICAL Condition—Transceiver Incompatibility

The transceivers on this link are not the same type or they are incompatible with the I/O module. This error prevents the controller from establishing a link with the enclosure drives and eliminates the enclosure dual-loop capability. This error remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.F.en.02 CRITICAL Condition—Transceiver Data Signal Lost

This symptom can occur when a controller has been powered off or a cable has been removed from the transceiver. The transceiver can no longer detect a data signal. This error prevents the controller from transferring data on a loop and eliminates the enclosure dual-loop capability. This error remains active until the problem is fixed.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.F.en.03 CRITICAL Condition—Transceiver FC-AL Bus Fault

The system has detected an FC-AL bus fault involving a transceiver. This error prevents the controller from transferring data on a loop ad eliminates the enclosure dual-loop capability.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Check all the transceivers and cables to ensure they are properly connected.
- 3. Check all the transceivers on the loop to ensure they are compatible with the I/O module.
- 4. If the problem persists, contact your HP authorized service representative.

0.F.en.04 CRITICAL Condition—Transceiver Removed

The EMU detects that a transceiver has been removed. This error remains active until the problem is fixed. The error can be cleared by doing one of the following:

1. Install a new transceiver,

or

Reconfigure the system by switching from a loop topology to one with Vixel switches, then the transceiver is not necessary.

2. Clear the error by resetting the EMU or by removing and then re-installing the I/O module.

0.F.en.05 CRITICAL Condition—Invalid Fibre Channel Character

This symptom can occur under the following conditions:

- The incoming data stream is corrupted.
- A cable is not completely connected.
- The signal is degraded.

This error prevents the controller from transferring data on a loop and eliminates the enclosure dual-loop capability. This error remains active until the problem is fixed.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

Voltage sensor and current sensor conditions

The format of these sensor condition reports is *1.2.en.ec* for a voltage sensor, and *1.3.en.ec* for a current sensor, where:

- 1.2. is the voltage sensor element type
- 1.3. is the current sensor element type number
- en. is the sensor element number
- ec is the error code

Table 54 lists the location of the power supply voltage and current sensors.

Sensor	Sensor Element Location
01.	Power Supply 1 +5 VDC
02.	Power Supply 1 +12 VDC
03.	Power Supply 2 +5 VDC
04.	Power Supply 2 +1 VDC

Use HP Command View EVA to view the voltage and current error thresholds for both +5 VDC and +12 VDC power supplies.

1.2.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—High Voltage

This condition report indicates that an element voltage is approaching, but has not reached, the high voltage CRITICAL threshold. Continued operation under these conditions may result in a CRITICAL condition. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

1.2.en.02 CRITICAL Condition—High Voltage

This condition report indicates that an element voltage has reached the high voltage CRITICAL threshold. This report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

1.2.en.03 NONCRITICAL Condition—Low Voltage

This condition report indicates that an element voltage is approaching, but has not reached, the low voltage CRITICAL threshold. Continued operation under these conditions may result in a CRITICAL condition. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

1.2.en.04 CRITICAL Condition—Low Voltage

This condition report indicates that an element voltage has reached the low voltage CRITICAL threshold. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

1.3.en.01 NONCRITICAL Condition—High Current

This condition report indicates that an element current is approaching, but has not reached, the high current CRITICAL threshold. Continued operation under these conditions may result in a CRITICAL condition. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

1.3.en.02 CRITICAL Condition—High Current

This condition report indicates that an element current has reached the high current CRITICAL threshold. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

Backplane conditions

IMPORTANT:

Backplane NVRAM errors usually occur during manufacture. At this time they are identified and corrected. They rarely occur during normal operation.

The format of a backplane condition report is 8.2.01.ec, where:

- 8.2. is the backplane element type number
- 01. is the two-character backplane element number
- ec is the error code

The only corrective action available for this error is to replace the drive enclosure.

8.2.01.10 NONCRITICAL condition—Backplane NVRAM read

An invalid NVRAM read occurred and an automatic recovery process has begun. This condition report is active for 15 seconds.

If the automatic recovery process does not correct the problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.2.01.11 NONCRITICAL condition—Backplane NVRAM write failure

The system is unable to write data to the NVRAM. This problem prevents communication between elements in the enclosure. This condition report is active for 15 seconds.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.2.01.12 NONCRITICAL condition—Backplane NVRAM read failure

The system is unable to read data from the NVRAM. This problem prevents communication between elements in the enclosure. This condition report is active for 15 seconds.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.2.01.13 NONCRITICAL condition—Backplane WWN is blank

The system is unable to read valid data from the NVRAM. This report is active until corrected. This condition can result in incorrect device location data being displayed.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

I/O Module conditions

The format of an I/O module condition report is 8.7.en.ec, where:

- 8.7. is the I/O module element type number
- en. is the two-character I/O module element number (see Figure 64)
- ec is the error code

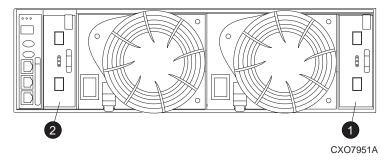


Figure 64 I/O module element numbering

- 1. I/O Module A (01)
- 2. I/O Module B (02)

Correction of an I/O module problem normally requires replacing the module. The following sections define the I/O module problem by I/O module location.

8.7.en.01 CRITICAL condition—I/O module unsupported

The I/O module Fibre Channel link speed is not supported by the backplane. This error prevents the controller from establishing a link with enclosure drives and eliminates the enclosure dual-loop capability. This condition report remains active until the problem is corrected.

To correct this problem, record all six characters of the condition report, then contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.7.en.02 CRITICAL condition—I/O module communication

The I/O module is unable to communicate with the EMU.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Contact your HP authorized service representative.

IMPORTANT:

Multiple erroneous error messages indicating I2C bus errors, such as NVRAM errors, blowers missing, and so forth, could indicate an EMU problem.

8.7.en.10 NONCRITICAL condition—I/O module NVRAM read

An invalid NVRAM read occurred and automatic recovery was initiated.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Observe the I/O module status LEDs for an operational display.
- 3. Contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.7.en.11 NONCRITICAL condition—I/O module NVRAM write

The system is unable to write data to the I/O module NVRAM.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Observe the I/O module status LEDs for an operational display.
- 3. Contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.7.en.12 NONCRITICAL condition—I/O Module NVRAM read failure

The system is unable to read data from the $\ensuremath{\mathrm{I/O}}$ module NVRAM.

Complete the following procedure to correct this problem:

- 1. Record all six characters of the condition report.
- 2. Contact your HP authorized service representative.

8.7.en.13 NONCRITICAL condition—I/O module removed

The system detects that an I/O module has been removed.

To correct the problem, install an I/O module.

Host conditions

The EMU has the capability of displaying host controller defined condition reports on the EMU alphanumeric display.

The format of a host condition report is F.F.en.ec, where:

- F.F. is the host element type number
- en. is the two-character host element number
- ec is the error code

The host controller can display host controller defined error codes on the EMU alphanumeric display

C Controller fault management

This appendix describes how the controller displays events and termination event information. Termination event information is displayed on the LCD. The HP Command View EVA GUI enables you to view controller events. This appendix also discusses how to identify and correct problems.

Once you create a storage system, as described in Chapter 2, "Setting Up a Controller Pair Using the OCP," an error condition message has priority over other controller displays.

The HP Command View EVA GUI provides detailed descriptions of the storage system error conditions, or faults. The Fault Management displays provide similar information on the LCD, but not in as much detail. Whenever possible, refer to the GUI for fault information.

Using the HP Command View EVA GUI

The HP Command View EVA GUI display provides detailed information about each event affecting system operation in either a Termination Event display or an Event display. These displays are similar, but not identical.

GUI termination event display

A problem that generates the Termination Event display prevents the system from performing a specific function or process. You can use the information in this display (see GUI Termination Event Display) to diagnose and correct the problem.

NOTE:

The major differences between the Termination Event display and the Event display are:

- The Termination Event display includes a Code Flag field; it does not include the EIP Type field.
- The Event display includes an EIP type field; it does not include a Code Flag field.
- The Event display includes a Corrective Action Code field.

	Ι.	1	1	1	I .
Date	Time	SWCID	Evt No	Code Flag	Descrip-
					tion

Figure 65 GUI termination event display

The fields in the Termination Event display include:

- Date—The date the event occurred.
- Time—The time the event occurred.
- SWCID—Software Identification Code. A hexadecimal number in the range 0–FF that identifies the controller software component reporting the event.
- Evt No—Event Number. A hexadecimal number in the range 0–FF that is the software component identification number.
- Code Flag—An internal code that includes a combination of other flags.
- Description—The condition that generated the event. This field may contain information about an individual field's content and validity.

GUI event display

A problem that generates the Event display reduces the system capabilities. You can use the information in this display (see Figure 66) to diagnose and correct problems.

NOTE:

The major differences between the Event Display and the Termination Event display are:

- The Event display includes an EIP type field; it does not include a Code Flag field.
- The Event display includes a Corrective Action Code (CAC) field.
- The Termination Event display includes a Code Flag field; it does not include the EIP Type field.

Date	Time	SWCID	Evt No	CAC	EIP Type	Descrip-
						tion

Figure 66 Typical HP Command View EVA Event display

The Event display provides the following information:

- Date—The date the event occurred.
- Time—The time the even occurred.
- SWCID—Software Identification Code. A number in the range 1–256 that identifies the internal firmware module affected.
- Evt No-Event Number. A hexadecimal number in the range 0-FF that is the software component identification number.
- CAC-Corrective Action Code. A specific action to correct the problem.
- EIP Type—Event Information Packet Type. A hexadecimal character that defines the event information format.
- Description—The problem that generated the event.

Fault management displays

When you do not have access to the GUI, you can display and analyze termination codes (TCs) on the OCP LCD display. You can then use the event text code document, as described in the section titled "Interpreting Fault Management Information" to determine and implement corrective action. You can also provide this information to the authorized service representative should you require additional support. This lets the service representative identify the tools and components required to correct the condition in the shortest possible time.

When the Fault Management display is active (flashing), you can either display the last fault or display detailed information about the last 32 faults reported.

Displaying Last Fault Information

Complete the following procedure to display Last Fault information

- 1. When the Fault Management display is active (flashing), press ▶ to select the Last Fault menu.
- 2. Press > to display the last fault information.

The first line of the TC display contains the eight-character TC error code and the two-character IDX (index) code. The IDX is a reference to the location in the TC array that contains this error. The second line of the TC display identifies the affected parameter with a two-character parameter number (0–30), the eight-character parameter code affected, and the parameter code number.

3. Press < to return to the Last Fault menu.

Displaying Detailed Information

The Detail View menu lets you examine detailed fault information stored in the Last Termination Event Array (LTEA). This array stores information for the last 32 termination events.

Complete the following procedure to display the LTEA information about any of the last 32 termination events:

- When the Fault Management display is active (flashing), press ▼to select the Detail View menu. The LTEA selection menu is active (LTEA 0 is displayed).
- 2. Press **V** or **A** to increment to a specific error, LTEA N, in this example.
- 3. Press ▶ to observe data about the selected error, LTEA N, in this example.

Interpreting Fault Management Information

Each version of the HP Command View EVA application includes an ASCII text file that defines all the codes that the authorized service representative can view either on the GUI or on the OCP.

IMPORTANT:

This information is for the exclusive use of the authorized service representative.

The file name identifies the file type and the revision date. For example, the file name *hsv110_event_w010605_t100.txt* provides the following information:

- hsv110_—the Network Storage Controller (NSC) model number string, that is the controller model number
- event_-the type of information in the file.
- w010605_—the NSC base level build string, that is, the file creation date.
 - 01-creation year
 - 06—creation month
 - 05-creation date
- t100—the NSC software version number string.

Table 55 describes types of information available in this file.

Table 55 Controller Event Text Description File

Information Type	Description
Event Code	This hexadecimal code identifies the reported event type.
Termination Code (TC)	The hexadecimal code specifies the condition that generated the termination code. It might also define either a system or user initiated corrective action.
Coupled Crash Control Codes	This single digit, decimal character defines the requirement for the other controller to initiate a coupled crash control.0. Other controller SHOULD NOT complete a coupled crash.1. Other controller SHOULD complete a coupled crash.
Dump/Restart Control Codes	This single decimal character (0, 1, 3) defines the requirement to:0. Perform a crash dump and then restart the controller.1. DO NOT perform a crash dump; just restart the controller.3. DO NOT perform a crash dump; DO NOT restart the controller
Corrective Action Codes (CAC)	These hexadecimal codes supplement the Termination Code information to identify the faulty element and the recommended corrective action.
Software Component ID Codes (SWCID)	These decimal codes identify software associated with the event.
Event Information Packets (EIP)	These codes specify the packet organization for specific type events.

D Customer replaceable units

This appendix describes the procedures for replacing CRUs. Information about initial enclosure installation, ESD protection, and common replacement procedures is also presented.

ESD protection

When you replace a CRU, you must take precautions to prevent the possibility of electrostatic discharge (ESD) damaging sensitive electronic items.

- 1. Always transport and store CRUs in an ESD protective enclosure.
- Do not remove the CRU from the ESD protective enclosure until you are ready to install it.
- Always use ESD precautions, such as a wrist strap, heel straps on conductive flooring, and an ESD protective smock when handling ESD sensitive equipment.
- 4. Avoid touching the CRU connector pins, leads, or circuitry.

NOTE:

Do not place ESD generating material such as paper or non anti-static (pink) plastic in an ESD protective enclosure with ESD sensitive equipment.

Common replacement procedures

The following procedure is common to all CRU replacement procedures.

\triangle CAUTION:

The hotpluggable power supplies, blowers, and drives DO NOT require halting Fibre Channel data transfers.

Replacing a pluggable I/O module, transceiver, or a fiber cable always interrupts data transfers on the Fibre Channel loop.

Review the controller documentation to determine if replacing an I/O module, transceiver or fiber cable requires removing power.

- 1. Always implement all the ESD protection procedures.
- 2. Disconnect external cables from the CRU and make note of the connection.
- 3. Remove the defective CRU from the enclosure.
- Remove the replacement CRU from the ESD protective enclosure. Check the label to ensure that the CRU is a compatible replacement (see Figure 67).
- 5. Align the CRU with the enclosure guide slots.
- 6. Reconnect external cables to restore external connections.
- Slide the CRU into the enclosure until the CRU is against the backplane connector.
- Fully seat the CRU in the enclosure and verify that the CRU is operating properly.
- Place the defective CRU in the ESD protective enclosure for shipment.

Determining CRU part numbers

All elements have a 6–3 spare part number on the product label (see Figure 67). This nine-character number appears immediately below the "Replace with HP Spare" statement. The first six characters (123479) identify the element. The last three characters (–002) define the revision level. The replacement element revision level must be the same as, or greater than, the number on the element being replaced. The higher the revision level, the later the revision.



Figure 67 Typical product label

Replacing a disk drive

NOTE:

For the latest information and instructions about disk drives, such as compatibility and installation instructions, go to the HP website: <u>http://www.hp.com</u>.

To replace a disk drive:

\triangle CAUTION:

Remove only one drive at a time and replace it with a drive of equal or greater capacity to avoid data loss. Allow the system to migrate data onto the replacement drive as indicated by the drive operational status in HP Command View EVA.

\triangle CAUTION:

Remove only one drive or drive blank at a time to avoid overheating the enclosure and to provide an electro-magnetic EM shield for the enclosure. Replace with another drive or drive blank to ensure proper air flow and EM shielding.

1. Push in on the disk drive Ejector Button 1 (see Figure 68), and pivot the Release Lever 2 to the full, open position

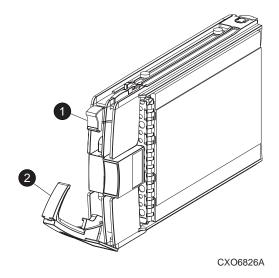


Figure 68 Removing a drive

2. Pull on the drive until it disconnects from the backplane connector.

\triangle CAUTION:

The carrier can be dropped due to the rapidly rotating media. To prevent equipment failure, remove the carrier from the enclosure when the media has stopped rotating. This takes approximately 30 seconds.

- 3. When you are sure that the media is no longer spinning, completely remove the drive from the enclosure.
- 4. Insert the replacement drive into the enclosure until the drive is against the backplane connector.
- 5. Push in the replacement drive while pivoting the Release Lever 2 to the full upright position.
- 6. Push in the Release Lever until the lever engages the Ejector Button 1, and the drive fully seats in the backplane connector.
- 7. Observe the drive status LEDs to ensure the replacement drive is functioning properly. Refer to your drive enclosure user guide for specific details.

Inserting disk drives into a running EVA

The following EVA operational restriction applies to all currently available versions of VCS.

When inserting more than 4 disk drives into an existing configuration that is running, the disk drives must be inserted in sets of 4 or fewer drives using the following procedure. This procedure must be followed to avoid unexpected EVA system behavior.

- Insert a set of 1 to 4 disk drives into the drive enclosures of the EVA so that each drive is fully seated and the locking mechanism is fully engaged.
- 2. Wait until the activity lights (down arrow) on all drives inserted in Step 1 have changed to the solid green indication and remain in that state for 10 seconds.

NOTE:

If one or more of the disk drives inserted does not reach the solid green indication after 70 seconds, remove the drive or drives and check for damaged connectors on the disk drive and drive enclosure.

If no damage is found, repeat Steps 1 and 2. After two attempts, replace drives that do not reach the solid green indication. When all of the inserted disk drives successfully reach the solid green indication, then repeat Steps 1 and 2 for the next set of 1 to 4 disk drives to be inserted.

NOTE:

Drive insertion refers to physically inserting drives into drive enclosure slots. It is not synonymous with drive addition to a disk group.

How to install a drive blank

Complete the following procedure to replace a disk drive with a drive blank:

 Push in the disk drive port wine-colored Ejector Button 1 (see Figure 69) and pivot the Release Lever 2 to the full, open position.

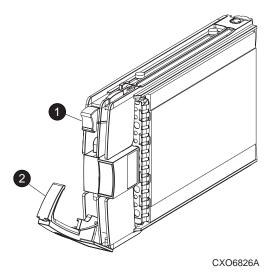


Figure 69 Removing a drive to install a drive blank

Pull on the drive to disconnect from the backplane connector.

\triangle CAUTION:

The carrier can be dropped due to the rapidly rotating media. To prevent equipment failure, remove the carrier from the enclosure when the media has stopped rotating. This takes approximately 30 seconds.

- 3. When you are sure that the media is no longer spinning, remove the drive from the enclosure.
- **4.** Insert the drive blank (see Figure 70) into the enclosure bay until the locking tabs engage the enclosure.

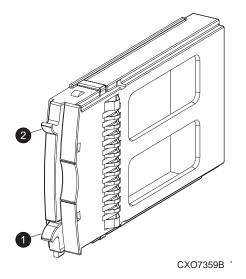


Figure 70 Installing and removing a drive blank

NOTE:

When installing drives, start at slot one, and do not leave blank slots between drives. If mixing online and near-online drives, a minimum of 8 online and 8 near-online drives are required. When loading drives into racks, align drives vertically by capacity.

How to remove a drive blank

Complete the following procedure to remove a drive blank:

- 1. Grasp the drive blank by the two tabs (1 and 2, Figure 70).
- 2. Lift up on the bottom tab 1 and pull the blank out of the enclosure.

Protecting fiber optic connections

This section provides protection and cleaning methods for fiber optic connectors.

Contamination of the fiber optic connectors on either a transceiver or a cable connector can impede the transmission of data. Therefore, protecting the connector tips against contamination or damage is imperative. The tips can be contaminated by touching them, by dust, or by debris. They can be damaged when dropped. To protect the connectors against contamination or damage, use the dust covers or dust caps provided by the manufacturer. These covers are removed during installation, and are installed whenever the transceivers or cables are disconnected. Cleaning the connectors should remove contamination.

The transceiver dust caps protect the transceivers from contamination.

\triangle CAUTION:

To avoid damage to the connectors, always install the dust covers or dust caps whenever a transceiver or a fiber cable is disconnected. Remove, *but do not discard*, the dust covers or dust caps from transceivers or fiber cable connectors only when they are connected.

To minimize the risk of contamination or damage, do the following:

• **Dust Covers**—Remove and retain the dust covers and dust caps when installing an I/O module, a transceiver or a cable. Install the dust covers when disconnecting a transceiver or cable.

- When to Clean—If a connector may be contaminated, or if a connector has not been protected by a dust cover for an extended period of time, clean it.
- How to Clean:
 - a. Wipe the connector with a lint-free tissue soaked with 100% isopropyl alcohol.
 - **b.** Wipe the connector with a dry, lint-free tissue.
 - c. Dry the connector with moisture-free compressed air.

One of the many sources for cleaning equipment specifically designed for fiber optic connectors is:

Alcoa Fujikura Ltd.

1-888-385-4587 (North America)

011-1-770-956-7200 (International)



This glossary defines terms used in this guide or related to this product and is not a comprehensive glossary of computer terms.

μm	A symbol for micrometer; one millionth of a meter. For example, 50 μm is equivalent to 0.000050 m.
3U	A unit of measurement representing three "U" spaces. "U" spacing is used to designate panel or enclosure heights. Three "U" spaces is equivalent to 5.25 inches (133 mm). See also rack-mounting unit.
active member of a virtual disk family	An active member of a virtual disk family is a simulated disk drive created by the controllers as storage for one or more hosts. An active member of a virtual disk family is accessible by one or more hosts for normal storage. An active virtual disk member and its snapshot, if one exists, constitute a virtual disk family. An active member of a virtual disk family is the only necessary member of a virtual disk family. See also virtual disk, virtual disk copy, virtual disk family, and snapshot.
adapter	See controller.
AL_PA	Arbitrated Loop Physical Address. A 1-byte value the arbitrated loop topology uses to identify the loop ports. This value becomes the last byte of the address identifier for each public port on the loop.
allocation policy	 Storage system rules that govern how virtual disks are created. Allocate Completely and Allocate on Demand are the two rules used in creating virtual disks. Allocate Completely—The space a virtual disk requires on the physical disks is reserved, even if the virtual disk is not currently using the space. Allocate on Demand—The space a virtual disk requires on the physical disks is not reserved until needed.
ambient tempera- ture	The air temperature in the area where a system is installed. Also called intake temperature or room temperature.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute. A non-governmental organization that develops standards (such as SCSI I/O interface standards and Fibre Channel interface standards) used voluntarily by many manufacturers within the United States.
arbitrated loop	A Fibre Channel topology that links multiple ports (up to 126) together on a single shared simplex media. Transmissions can only occur between a single pair of nodes at any given time. Arbitration is the scheme that determines which node has control of the loop at any given moment
arbitrated loop physical address	See AL_PA.
arbitrated loop topology	See arbitrated loop.
array	All the physical disk drives in a storage system that are known to and under the control of a controller pair.

array controller	See controller.
asynchronous	Events scheduled as the result of a signal requesting the event or that which is without any specified time relation.
audible alarm	The Environmental Monitoring Unit (EMU) alarm that sounds when there is a drive enclosure element condition report. The audible alarm can be muted or disabled.
backplane	An electronic printed circuit board that distributes data, control, power, and other signals to element connectors.
bad block	A data block that contains a physical defect.
bad block replace- ment	A replacement routine that substitutes defect-free disk blocks for those found to have defects. This process takes place in the controller and is transparent to the host.
bail lock	Part of the power supply AC receptacle that engages the AC power cord connector to ensure that the cord cannot be accidentally disconnected.
baud	The maximum rate of signal state changes per second on a communication circuit. If each signal state change corresponds to a code bit, then the baud rate and the bit rate are the same. It is also possible for signal state changes to correspond to more than one code bit so the baud rate may be lower than the code bit rate.
bay	The physical location of an element, such as a drive, I/O module, EMU or power supply in a drive enclosure. Each bay is numbered to define its location.
bidirectional	<i>Also</i> called Bi-Di. The movement of optical signals in opposite directions through a common fiber cable such as the data flow path typically on a parallel printer port. A parallel port can provide two-way data flow for disk drives, scanning devices, FAX operations and even parallel modems.
block	Also called a sector. The smallest collection of consecutive bytes addressable on a disk drive. In integrated storage elements, a block contains 512 bytes of data, error codes, flags, and the block address header.
blower	A variable speed airflow device that pulls air into an enclosure or element. It usually pulls air in from the front and exhausts the heated air out the rear.
cabinet	An alternate term used for a rack.
cable assembly	 A fiber optic cable that has connectors installed on one or both ends. General use of these cable assemblies includes the interconnection of multimode fiber optic cable assemblies with either LC or SC type connectors. When there is a connector on only one end of the cable, the cable assembly is referred to as a pigtail. When there is a connector on each end of the cable, the cable assembly is referred to as a jumper.
CAC	Corrective Action Code. An HP Command View EVA graphical user interface (GUI) display component that defines the action required to correct a problem. <i>See also</i> read cache, write cache, and mirrored cache.
cache	High-speed memory that sets aside data as an intermediate data buffer between a host and the storage media. The purpose of cache is to improve performance.
cache battery	A rechargeable unit mounted within a controller enclosure that supplies back-up power to the cache module in case of primary power shortage.

cache battery in- dicator	1. An orange light emitting diode (indicator) that illuminates on the controller operator control panel (OCP) to define the status of the HSV Controller cache batteries.
	2. An amber status indicator that illuminates on a cache battery. When illuminated, it indicates that one or more cache battery cells have failed and the battery must be replaced with a new battery.
carrier	A drive-enclosure-compatible assembly containing a disk drive or other storage devices.
client	A software program that uses the services of another software program. The HP Command View EVA client is a standard internet browser.
clone	See Virtual Disk Copy.
communication logical unit num- ber (LUN)	See console LUN.
condition report	A three-element code generated by the EMU in the form where e.t. is the element type (a hexadecimal number), en. is the element number (a decimal number), and ec is the condition code (a decimal number).
console LUN	A SCSI-3 virtual object that makes a controller pair accessible by the host before any virtual disks are created. <i>Also</i> called a communication LUN.
console LUN ID	The ID that can be assigned when a host operating system requires a unique ID. The console LUN ID is assigned by the user, usually when the storage system is initialized. See also console LUN.
controller	A hardware/firmware device that manages communications between host systems and other devices. Controllers typically differ by the type of interface to the host and provide functions beyond those the devices support.
controller enclo- sure	A unit that holds one or more controllers, power supplies, blowers, cache batteries, transceivers, and connectors.
controller event	A significant occurrence involving any storage system hardware or software component reported by the controller to HP Command View EVA.
controller fault indicator	An amber fault indicator that illuminates on the controller OCP to indicate when there is an HSV Controller fault.
controller pair	Two interconnected controller modules which together control the disk enclosures in the storage system.
corrective action code	See CAC.
CRITICAL Condi- tion	A drive enclosure EMU condition that occurs when one or more drive enclosure elements have failed or are operating outside of their specifications. The failure of the element makes continued normal operation of at least some elements in the enclosure impossible. Some enclosure elements may be able to continue normal operations. Only an UNRECOVERABLE condition has precedence. This condition has precedence over NONCRITICAL errors and INFORMATION condition.
CRU	Customer Replaceable Unit. A storage system element that a user can replace without using special tools or techniques, or special training.
customer replace- able unit	See CRU.

data entry mode	The state in which controller information can be displayed or controller configuration data can be entered. On the Enterprise Storage System, the controller mode is active when the LCD on the HSV Controller OCP is Flashing.
default disk group	The first disk group created at the time the system in initialized. The default disk group can contain the entire set of physical disks in the array or just a few of the disks. See also disk group.
Detailed Fault View	An HSV Controller OCP display that permits a user to view detailed information about a controller fault.
device channel	A channel used to connect storage devices to a host I/O bus adapter or intelligent controller.
device ports	Controller pair device ports connected to the storage system's physical disk drive array through the Fibre Channel drive enclosure. <i>Also</i> called a device-side port.
device-side ports	See device ports.
DIMM	Dual Inline Memory Module. A small circuit board holding memory chips.
dirty data	The write-back cached data that has not been written to storage media even though the host operation processing the data has completed.
disk drive	A carrier-mounted storage device supporting random access to fixed size blocks of data.
disk drive blank	A carrier that replaces a disk drive to control airflow within a drive enclosure whenever there is less than a full complement of storage devices.
drive enclosure	A unit that holds storage system devices such as disk drives, power supplies, blowers, I/O modules, transceivers, or EMUs.
drive enclosure event	A significant operational occurrence involving a hardware or software component in the drive enclosure. The drive enclosure EMU reports these events to the controller for processing.
disk failure pro- tection	A method by which a controller pair reserves drive capacity to take over the functionality of a failed or failing physical disk. For each disk group, the controllers reserve space in the physical disk pool equivalent to the selected number of physical disk drives.
disk group	A physical disk drive set or pool in which a virtual disk is created. A disk group may contain all the physical disk drives in a controller pair array or a subset of the array.
disk migration state	 A physical disk drive operating state. A physical disk drive can be in a stable or migration state: Stable—The state in which the physical disk drive has no failure nor is a failure predicted. Migration—The state in which the disk drive is failing, or failure is predicted to be imminent. Data is then moved off the disk onto other disk drives in the same disk group.
disk replacement delay	The time that elapses between a drive failure and when the controller starts searching for spare disk space. Drive replacement seldom starts immediately in case the "failure" was a glitch or temporary condition.
drive blank	See disk drive blank.
drive enclosure	See drive enclosure.
dual-loop	A configuration where each drive is connected to a pair of controllers through two loops. These two Fibre Channel loops constitute a loop pair.

dual power supply configuration	See redundant power configuration.		
dynamic capacity expansion	A storage system feature that provides the ability to increase the size of an existing virtual disk. Before using this feature, you must ensure that your operating system supports capacity expansion of a virtual disk (or LUN).		
EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance. A standards organization specializing in the electrical and functional characteristics of interface equipment.		
EIP	Event Information Packet. The event information packet is an HSV element hexadecimal character display that defines how an event was detected. Also called the EIP type.		
electromagnetic interference	See EMI.		
electrostatic dis- charge	See ESD.		
element	 In a drive enclosure, a device such as an EMU, power supply, disk, blower, or I/O module. The object can be controlled, interrogated, or described by the enclosure services process. In the Open SAN Manager, a controllable object, such as the Enterprise 		
	storage system.		
Command View EVA GUI	The graphical user interface (GUI) through which a user can control and monitor a storage system. HP Command View EVA can be installed on more than one storage management server in a fabric. Each installation is a management agent. The client for the agent is a standard browser.		
EMI	Electromagnetic Interference. The impairment of a signal by an electromagnetic disturbance.		
EMU	Environmental Monitoring Unit. An element which monitors the status of an enclosure, including the power, air temperature, and blower status. The EMU detects problems and displays and reports these conditions to a user and the controller. In some cases, the EMU implements corrective action.		
enclosure	A unit used to hold various storage system devices such as disk drives, controllers, power supplies, blowers, an EMU, I/O modules, or blowers.		
enclosure address bus	An Enterprise storage system bus that interconnects and identifies controller enclosures and disk drive enclosures by their physical location. Enclosures within a reporting group can exchange environmental data. This bus uses enclosure ID expansion cables to assign enclosure numbers to each enclosure. Communications over this bus do not involve the Fibre Channel drive enclosure bus and are, therefore, classified as out-of-band communications.		
enclosure number (En)	One of the vertical rack-mounting positions where the enclosure is located. The positions are numbered sequentially in decimal numbers starting from the bottom of the cabinet. Each disk enclosure has its own enclosure number. A controller pair shares an enclosure number. If the system has an expansion rack, the enclosures in the expansion rack are numbered from 15 to 24, starting at the bottom.		
enclosure services	Those services that establish the mechanical environmental, electrical environmental, and external indicators and controls for the proper operation and maintenance of devices with an enclosure as described in the SES SCSI-3 Enclosure Services Command Set (SES), Rev 8b, American National Standard for Information Services.		

Enclosure Services Interface	See ESI.
Enclosure Services Processor	See ESP.
Enterprise Virtual Array	The Enterprise Virtual Array is a product that consists of one or more storage systems. Each storage system consists of a pair of HSV controllers and the disk drives they manage. A storage system within the Enterprise Virtual Array can be formally referred to as an Enterprise storage system, or generically referred to as the storage system.
Enterprise Virtual Array rack	A unit that holds controller enclosures, disk drive enclosures, power distribution supplies, and enclosure address buses that, combined, comprise an Enterprise storage system solution. <i>Also</i> called the Enterprise storage system rack. <i>See also</i> rack.
environmental monitoring unit	See EMU.
error code	The portion of an EMU condition report that defines a problem.
ESD	Electrostatic Discharge. The emission of a potentially harmful static electric voltage as a result of improper grounding.
ESI	Enclosure Services Interface. The SCSI-3 engineering services interface implementation developed for StorageWorks products. A bus that connects the EMU to the disk drives.
ESP	Enclosure Services Processor. An EMU that implements an enclosure's services process.
event	Any significant change in the state of the Enterprise storage system hardware or software component reported by the controller to HP Command View EVA. See also controller event, drive enclosure event, management agent event, and termination event.
Event Information Packet	See EIP.
Event Number	See Evt No.
Evt No.	Event Number. A sequential number assigned to each Software Code Identification (SWCID) event. It is a decimal number in the range 0-255.
exabyte	A unit of storage capacity that is the equivalent of 2 ⁶⁰ bytes or 1,152,921,504,606,846,976 bytes. One exabyte is equivalent to 1,024 petabytes.
fabric	A Fibre Channel fabric or two or more interconnected Fibre Channel es allowing data transmission.
fabric port	A port which is capable of supporting an attached arbitrated loop. This port on a loop will have the AL_PA hexadecimal address 00 (loop ID 7E), giving the fabric the highest priority access to the loop. A loop port is the gateway to the fabric for the node ports on a loop.
failover	The process that takes place when one controller assumes the workload of a failed companion controller. Failover continues until the failed controller is operational.
fan	The variable speed airflow device that cools an enclosure or element by forcing ambient air into an enclosure or element and forcing heated air out the other side. See also blower.

Fault Manage- ment Code	See FMC.
Fibre Channel drive enclosure	Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop. The American National Standards Institute's (ANSI) document that specifies arbitrated loop topology operation.
FC HBA	Fibre Channel Host Bus Adapter. An interchangeable term for Fibre Channel adapter. <i>See also</i> FCA.
FCA	Fibre Channel Adapter. An adapter used to connect the host server to the fabric. <i>Also</i> called a Host Bus Adapter (HBA) or a Fibre Channel Host Bus Adapter (FC HBA). <i>See also</i> FC HBA.
FCC	Federal Communications Commission. The federal agency responsible for establishing standards and approving electronic devices within the United States.
FCP	Fibre Channel Protocol. The mapping of SCSI-3 operations to Fibre Channel.
fiber	The optical media used to implement Fibre Channel.
fiber optics	The technology where light is transmitted through glass or plastic (optical) threads (fibers) for data communication or signaling purposes.
fiber optic cable	A transmission medium designed to transmit digital signals in the form of pulses of light. Fiber optic cable is noted for its properties of electrical isolation and resistance to electrostatic contamination.
fibre	The international spelling that refers to the Fibre Channel standards for optical media.
Fibre Channel	A data transfer architecture designed for mass storage devices and other peripheral devices that require very high bandwidth.
Fibre Channel adapter	See FCA.
Fibre Channel Loop	An enclosure that provides twelve-port central interconnect for Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loops following the ANSI Fibre Channel drive enclosure standard.
field replaceable unit	See FRU.
flush	The act of writing dirty data from cache to a storage media
FMC	Fault Management Code. The HP Command View EVA display of the Enterprise Storage System error condition information.
form factor	A storage industry dimensional standard for 3.5inch (89 mm) and 5.25inch (133 mm) high storage devices. Device heights are specified as low-profile (1 inch or 25.4 mm), half-height (1.6inch or 41 mm), and full-height (5.25inch or 133 mm).
FPGA	Field Programmable Gate Array. A programmable device with an internal array of logic blocks surrounded by a ring of programmable I/O blocks connected together through a programmable interconnect.
frequency	The number of cycles that occur in one second expressed in Hertz (Hz). Thus, 1 Hz is equivalent to one cycle per second.
FRU	Field Replaceable Unit. A hardware element that can be replaced in the field. This type of replacement can require special training, tools, or techniques. Therefore, FRU procedures are usually performed only by an Authorized Service Representative.

Gb	 Gigabit. A measurement of the rate at which the transfer of bits of data occurs. Sometimes referred to as Gbps. Nominally, a Gb is a transfer rate of 1,000,000,000 (10°) bits per second. For Fibre Channel transceivers or FC loops the Gb transfer rates are: 1 Gb is a transmission rate of 1,062,500,000 bits per second. 2 Gb is a transmission rate of 2,125,000,000 bits per second.
GB	 Gigabyte. A unit of measurement defining either: A data transfer rate. A storage or memory capacity of 1,073,741,824 (2³⁰) bytes. See also GBps.
Gbps	Gigabits per second. A measurement of the rate at which the transfer of bits of data occurs. Nominally, a Gb is a transfer rate of 1,000,000,000 (10 ⁹) bits per second. See also Gb.
GBps	Gigabytes per second. A measurement of the rate at which the transfer of bytes of data occurs. A GBps is a transfer rate of 1,000,000,000 (10 ⁹) bytes per second. See also GB.
Giga (G)	The notation to represent 10° or 1 billion (1,000,000,000).
gigabaud	An encoded bit transmission rate of one billion (10°) bits per second.
gigabit	See Gb.
gigabit per second	See Gbps.
graphical user interface	See GUI.
GUI	Graphical User Interface. Software that displays the status of a storage system and allows its user to control the storage system.
НВА	Host Bus Adapter. <i>See also</i> FCA.
host	A computer that runs user applications and uses (or can potentially use) one or more virtual disks created and presented by the controller pair.
Host Bus Adapter	See FCA.
host computer	See host.
host link indicator	The HSV Controller display that indicates the status of the storage system Fibre Channel links.
host ports	A connection point to one or more hosts through a Fibre Channel fabric. A host is a computer that runs user applications and that uses (or can potentially use) one or more of the virtual disks that are created and presented by the controller pair.
host-side ports	See host ports.
hot-pluggable	A method of element replacement whereby the complete system remains operational during element removal or insertion. Replacement does not interrupt data transfers to other elements.
hub	A communications infrastructure device to which nodes on a multi-point bus or loop are physically connected. It is used to improve the manageability of physical cables.

I/O module	Input/Output module. The enclosure element that is the Fibre Channel drive enclosure interface to the host or controller. I/O modules are bus speed specific, either 1 Gb or 2 Gb.
IDX	A 2-digit decimal number portion of the HSV controller termination code display that defines one of 32 locations in the Termination Code array that contains information about a specific event. <i>See also</i> param and TC.
in-band communi- cation	The method of communication between the EMU and controller that utilizes the Fibre Channel drive enclosure bus.
INFORMATION condition	A drive enclosure EMU condition report that may require action. This condition is for information only and does not indicate the failure of an element. All condition reports have precedence over an INFORMATION condition.
initialization	A process that prepares a storage system for use. Specifically, the system binds controllers together as an operational pair and establishes preliminary data structures on the disk array. Initialization also sets up the first disk group, called the default disk group.
input/output mod- ule	See I/O module.
intake tempera- ture	See ambient temperature
interface	A set of protocols used between components such as cables, connectors, and signal levels.
JBOD	Just a Bunch of Disks. A number of disks connected to one or more controllers.
К	Kilo. A scientific notation denoting a multiplier of one thousand (1,000).
КВ	 Kilobyte. A unit of measurement defining either storage or memory capacity. For storage, a KB is a capacity of 1,000 (10³) bytes of data. For memory, a KB is a capacity of 1,024 (2¹⁰) bytes of data.
LAN	Local area network. A group of computers and associated devices that share a common communications line and typically share the resources of a single processor or server within a small geographic area.
laser	A device that amplifies light waves and concentrates them in a narrow, very intense beam.
Last Fault View	An HSV Controller display defining the last reported fault condition.
Last Termination Error Array	See LTEA.
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display. The indicator on a panel that is associated with an element. The LCD is usually located on the front of an element.
indicator	Light Emitting Diode. A semiconductor diode, used in an electronic display, that emits light when a voltage is applied to it.
License Key	A WWN-encoded sequence that is obtained from the license key fulfillment website.
light emitting diode	See indicator.
link	A connection between ports on Fibre Channel devices. The link is a full duplex connection to a fabric or a simplex connection between loop devices.

logon	<i>Also</i> called login, it is a procedure whereby a user or network connection is identified as being an authorized network user or participant.
loop	See arbitrated loop.
loop ID	Seven-bit values numbered contiguously from 0 to 126 decimal and represent the 127 valid AL_PA values on a loop (not all 256 hexadecimal values are allowed as AL_PA values per Fibre Channel).
loop pair	A Fibre Channel attachment between a controller and physical disk drives. Physical disk drives connect to controllers through paired Fibre Channel arbitrated loops. There are two loop pairs, designated loop pair 1 and loop pair 2. Each loop pair consists of two loops (called loop A and loop B) that operate independently during normal operation, but provide mutual backup in case one loop fails.
LTEA	Last Termination Event Array. A two-digit HSV Controller number that identifies a specific event that terminated an operation. Valid numbers range from 00 to 31.
LUN	Logical Unit Number. A SCSI convention used to identify elements. The host sees a virtual disk as a LUN. The LUN address a user assigns to a virtual disk for a particular host will be the LUN at which that host will see the virtual disk.
management agent	The HP Command View EVA software that controls and monitors the Enterprise storage system. The software can exist on more than one management server in a fabric. Each installation is a management agent.
management agent event	Significant occurrence to or within the management agent software, or an initialized storage cell controlled or monitored by the management agent.
МЬ	Megabit. A term defining a data transfer rate. See also Mbps.
MB	 Megabtye. A term defining either: A data transfer rate. A measure of either storage or memory capacity of 1,048,576 (2²⁰) bytes. See also MBps.
Mbps	Megabits per second. A measure of bandwidth or data transfers occurring at a rate of 1,000,000 (10 ⁶) bits per second.
MBps	Megabytes per second. A measure of bandwidth or data transfers occurring at a rate of 1,000,000 (10 ⁶) bytes per second.
mean time be- tween failures	See MTBF.
Mega	A notation denoting a multiplier of 1 million (1,000,000).
metadata	Information that a controller pair writes on the disk array. This information is used to control and monitor the array and is not readable by the host.
micro meter	See µm.
mirrored caching	A process in which half of each controller's write cache mirrors the companion controller's write cache. The total memory available for cached write data is reduced by half, but the level of protection is greater.
mirroring	The act of creating an exact copy or image of data.
MTBF	Mean Time Between Failures. The average time from start of use to first failure in a large population of identical systems, components, or devices.

multi-mode fiber	A fiber optic cable with a diameter large enough (50 microns or more) to allow multiple streams of light to travel different paths from the transmitter to the receiver. This transmission mode enables bidirectional transmissions.
Network Storage Controller	See NSC.
NONCRITICAL Condition	A drive enclosure EMU condition report that occurs when one or more elements inside the enclosure have failed or are operating outside of their specifications. The failure does not affect continued normal operation of the enclosure. All devices in the enclosure continue to operate according to their specifications. The ability of the devices to operate correctly may be reduced if additional failures occur. UNRECOVERABLE and CRITICAL errors have precedence over this condition. This condition has precedence over INFORMATION condition. <i>Early correction can prevent the loss of data.</i>
node port	A device port that can operate on the arbitrated loop topology.
non-OFC (Open Fibre Control)	A laser transceiver whose lower-intensity output does not require special open Fibre Channel mechanisms for eye protection. The Enterprise storage system transceivers are non-OFC compatible.
NSC	Network Storage Controller. The HSV Controllers used by the Enterprise storage system.
NVRAM	Nonvolatile Random Access Memory. Memory whose contents are not lost when a system is turned Off or if there is a power failure. This is achieved through the use of UPS batteries or implementation technology such as flash memory. NVRAM is commonly used to store important configuration parameters.
occupancy alarm level	A percentage of the total disk group capacity in blocks. When the number of blocks in the disk group that contain user data reaches this level, an event code is generated. The alarm level is specified by the user.
ОСР	Operator Control Panel. The element that displays the controller's status using indicators and an LCD. Information selection and data entry is controlled by the OCP push-buttons.
online/nearonline	An online drive is a normal, high-perfomance drive, while a near-online drive is a lower-performance drive.
operator control panel	See OCP.
OpenView Stor- age Management Server	A centralized, appliance-based monitoring and management interface that supports multiple applications, operating systems, hardware platforms, storage systems, tape libraries and SAN-related interconnect devices. It is included and resides on the SANWorks Management Server, a single aggregation point for data management.
param	 That portion of the HSV controller termination code display that defines: The 2-character parameter identifier that is a decimal number in the 0 through 30 range. The 8-character parameter code that is a hexadecimal number. See also IDX and TC.
password	A security interlock where the purpose is to allow:A management agent to control only certain storage systemsOnly certain management agents to control a storage system
PDM	Power Distribution Module. A thermal circuit breaker-equipped power strip that distributes power from a PDU to Enterprise Storage System elements.

PDU	Power Distribution Unit. The rack device that distributes conditioned AC or DC power within a rack.
petabyte	A unit of storage capacity that is the equivalent of 2 ⁵⁰ , 1,125,899,906,842,624 bytes or 1,024 terabytes.
physical disk	A disk drive mounted in a drive enclosure that communicates with a controller pair through the device-side Fibre Channel loops. A physical disk is hardware with embedded software, as opposed to a virtual disk, which is constructed by the controllers. Only the controllers can communicate directly with the physical disks. The physical disks, in aggregate, are called the array and constitute the storage pool from which the controllers create virtual disks.
physical disk ar- ray	See array.
port	A Fibre Channel connector on a Fibre Channel device.
port_name	A 64-bit unique identifier assigned to each Fibre Channel port. The port_name is communicated during the login and port discovery processes.
port-wine colored	A convention of applying the color of port wine to a CRU tab, lever, or handle to identify the unit as hot-pluggable.
power distribution module	See PDM.
power distribution unit	See PDU.
power supply	An element that develops DC voltages for operating the storage system elements from either an AC or DC source.
preferred address	An AL_PA which a node port attempts to acquire during loop initialization.
preferred path	A preference for which controller of the controller pair manages the virtual disk. This preference is set by the user when creating the virtual disk. A host can change the preferred path of a virtual disk at any time. The primary purpose of preferring a path is load balancing.
protocol	The conventions or rules for the format and timing of messages sent and received.
push-button	A that is engaged or disengaged when it is pressed.
quiesce	The act of rendering bus activity inactive or dormant. For example, "quiesce the SCSI bus operations during a device warm-swap."
rack	A floorstanding structure primarily designed for, and capable of, holding and supporting storage system equipment. All racks provide for the mounting of panels per Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) <i>Standard RS310C</i> .
rack-mounting unit	A measurement for rack heights based upon a repeating hole pattern. It is expressed as "U" spacing or panel heights. Repeating hole patterns are spaced every 1.75 inches (44.45 mm) and based on EIA's <i>Standard RS310C</i> . For example, a 3U unit is 5.25 inches (133.35 mm) high, and a 4U unit is 7.0 inches (177.79 mm) high.
read caching	A cache method used to decrease subsystem response times to a read request by allowing the controller to satisfy the request from the cache memory rather than from the disk drives. Reading data from cache memory is faster than reading data from a disk. The read cache is specified as either On or Off for each virtual disk. The default state is on.

read ahead caching	A cache management method used to decrease the subsystem response time to a read request by allowing the controller to satisfy the request from the cache memory rather than from the disk drives.
reconstruction	The process of regenerating the contents of a failed member data. The reconstruction process writes the data to a spare set disk and incorporates the spare set disk into the mirrorset, striped mirrorset or RAID set from which the failed member came.
redundancy	 Element Redundancy—The degree to which logical or physical elements are protected by having another element that can take over in case of failure. For example, each loop of a device-side loop pair normally works independently but can take over for the other in case of failure. Data Redundancy—The level to which user data is protected. Redundancy is directly proportional to cost in terms of storage usage; the greater the level of data protection, the more storage space is required.
redundant power configuration	 A capability of the Enterprise storage system racks and enclosures to allow continuous system operation by preventing single points of power failure. For a rack, two AC power sources and two power conditioning units distribute primary and redundant AC power to enclosure power supplies. For a controller or drive enclosure, two power supplies ensure that the DC power is available even when there is a failure of one supply, one AC source, or one power conditioning unit. Implementing the redundant power configuration provides protection against the loss or corruption of data.
reporting group	An Enterprise Storage System controller pair and the associated disk drive enclosures. The Enterprise Storage System controller assigns a unique decimal reporting group number to each EMU on its loops. Each EMU collects disk drive environmental information from its own sub-enclosure and broadcasts the data over the enclosure address bus to all members of the reporting group. Information from enclosures in other reporting groups is ignored.
room temperature	See ambient temperature
SCSI	1. Small Computer System Interface. An American National Standards Institute (ANSI) interface which defines the physical and electrical parameters of a parallel I/O bus used to connect computers and a maximum of 16 bus elements.
	2. The communication protocol used between a controller pair and the hosts. Specifically, the protocol is Fibre Channel drive enclosure or SCSI on Fibre Channel. SCSI is the higher command-level protocol and Fibre Channel is the low-level transmission protocol. The controllers have full support for SCSI-2; additionally, they support some elements of SCSI-3.
SCSI-3	The ANSI standard that defines the operation and function of Fibre Channel systems.
SCSI-3 Enclosure Services	See SES.
selective presenta- tion	The process whereby a controller presents a virtual disk only to the host computer which is authorized access.
serial transmission	A method of transmission in which each bit of information is sent sequentially on a single channel rather than simultaneously as in parallel transmission.
SES	SCSI-3 Enclosures Services. Those services that establish the mechanical environment, electrical environment, and external indicators and controls for the proper operation and maintenance of devices within an enclosure.

small computer system interface	See SCSI.
Snapclone	A virtual disk that can be manipulated while the data is being copied. Only an Active member of a virtual disk family can be snapcloned. The Snapclone, like a snapshot, reflects the contents of the source virtual disk at a particular point in time. Unlike the snapshot, the Snapclone is an actual clone of the source virtual disk and immediately becomes an independent Active member of its own virtual disk family.
snapshot	A temporary virtual disk (Vdisk) that reflects the contents of another virtual disk at a particular point in time. A snapshot operation is only done on an active virtual disk. Up to seven snapshots of an active virtual disk can exist at any point. The active disk and its snapshot constitute a virtual family. See also active virtual disk, virtual disk copy, and virtual disk family.
SSN	Storage System Name. An HP Command View EVA-assigned, unique 20-character name that identifies a specific storage system.
storage carrier	See carrier.
storage pool	The aggregated blocks of available storage in the total physical disk array.
storage system	The controllers, storage devices, enclosures, cables, and power supplies and their software.
Storage System Name	See SSN.
	An electro-mechanical device that initiates an action or completes a circuit.
ТВ	Terabyte. A term defining either:
	 A data transfer rate. A measure of either storage or memory capacity of 1,099,5111,627,776 (2⁴⁰) bytes. See also TBps.
TBps	Terabytes per second. A data transfer rate of 1,000,000,000,000 (10 ¹²) bytes per second.
TC	Termination Code. An Enterprise Storage System controller 8-character hexadecimal display that defines a problem causing controller operations to halt. <i>See also IDX</i> and param.
Termination Code	See TC.
termination event	Occurrences that cause the storage system to cease operation.
terminator	Interconnected elements that form the ends of the transmission lines in the enclosure address bus.
topology	An interconnection scheme that allows multiple Fibre Channel ports to communicate. Point-to-point, arbitrated loop, and ed fabric are all Fibre Channel topologies.
transceiver	The device that converts electrical signals to optical signals at the point where the fiber cables connect to the FC elements such as hubs, controllers, or adapters.
uninitialized sys- tem	A state in which the storage system is not ready for use. <i>See also</i> initialization.
UNRECOVERABLE Condition	A drive enclosure EMU condition report that occurs when one or more elements inside the enclosure have <i>failed</i> and have disabled the enclosure. The enclosure

	may be incapable of recovering or bypassing the failure and will require repairs to correct the condition. This is the highest level condition and has precedence over all other errors and requires <i>immediate corrective action</i> .
unwritten cached data	Also called unflushed data. See also dirty data.
UPS	Uninterruptible Power Supply. A battery-operated power supply guaranteed to provide power to an electrical device in the event of an unexpected interruption to the primary power supply. Uninterruptible power supplies are usually rated by the amount of voltage supplied and the length of time the voltage is supplied.
Vdisk	Virtual Disk. A simulated disk drive created by the controllers as storage for one or more hosts. The virtual disk characteristics, chosen by the storage administrator, provide a specific combination of capacity, availability, performance, and accessibility. A controller pair simulates the characteristics of the virtual disk by deploying the disk group from which the virtual disk was created. The host computer sees the virtual disk as "real," with the characteristics of an identical physical disk. See also active virtual disk, virtual disk copy, virtual disk family, and virtual disk snapshot.
virtual disk	See Vdisk.
virtual disk copy	A clone or exact replica of another virtual disk at a particular point in time. Only an active virtual disk can be copied. A copy immediately becomes the active disk of its own virtual disk family. <i>See also</i> active virtual disk, virtual disk family, and virtual disk snapshot
virtual disk family	A virtual disk and its snapshot, if a snapshot exists, constitute a family. The
	original virtual disk is called the active disk. When you first create a virtual disk family, the only member is the active disk. <i>See also</i> active virtual disk, virtual disk copy, and virtual disk snapshot.
virtual disk snap- shot	family, the only member is the active disk.
	family, the only member is the active disk. See also active virtual disk, virtual disk copy, and virtual disk snapshot.
shot	 family, the only member is the active disk. See also active virtual disk, virtual disk copy, and virtual disk snapshot. See snapshot. A virtualization technique that provides no data protection. Data host is broken down into chunks and distributed on the disks comprising the disk group from which the virtual disk was created. Reading and writing to a VraidO virtual disk is very fast and makes the fullest use of the available storage, but there is no
shot Vraid0	 family, the only member is the active disk. See also active virtual disk, virtual disk copy, and virtual disk snapshot. See snapshot. A virtualization technique that provides no data protection. Data host is broken down into chunks and distributed on the disks comprising the disk group from which the virtual disk was created. Reading and writing to a VraidO virtual disk is very fast and makes the fullest use of the available storage, but there is no data protection (redundancy) unless there is parity. A virtualization technique that provides the highest level of data protection. All data blocks are mirrored or written twice on separate physical disks. For read requests, the block can be read from either disk, which can increase performance. Mirroring takes the most storage space because twice the storage

write back caching	A controller process that notifies the host that the write operation is complete when the data is written to the cache. This occurs before transferring the data to the disk. Write back caching improves response time since the write operation completes as soon as the data reaches the cache. As soon as possible after caching the data, the controller then writes the data to the disk drives.
write caching	A process when the host sends a write request to the controller, and the controller places the data in the controller cache module. As soon as possible, the controller transfers the data to the physical disk drives.
WWN	World Wide Name. A unique Fibre Channel identifier consisting of a 16-character hexadecimal number. A WWN is required for each Fibre Channel communication port.

Index

Symbols

+5.1 VDC, 69 2C12D configuration, 17 41U rack, 17, 27

A

AC input missing, 139 AC power distributing, 105 frequency, 69 voltage, 69 AC power specifications, 128 address bus, PIC, 98 air flow affecting temperature, 69 adjusting automatically, 69 affecting temperature, 68 CAUTIONs, 68 air quality environmental specifications, 127 air quality: operating specifications, 132 alarm code cycles, 77 alphanumeric display controlling, 76 description, 73, 76 altitude shipping, 127, 132 short term storage, 127 ambient temperature short term storage, 127 sensing, 90 shipping, 127 ambient temperature environmental specifications, 127 API versions, 97 application-level help, 21 ASCII, error codes definitions, 157 asynchronous disk swap, 22 audible alarm unmuting, 78 disabling, 79 enabling, 78 muting, 78 selecting display group, 76 sound patterns, 7 automatically correcting errors, 72

В

backplane NONCRITICAL conditions, 151, 151, 151 NVRAM conditions, 145, 151 backplane connector, 161, 162 backplane overcurrent sensors, 67 basic replacement procedures, 159 battery PIC, 98 bays locating, 59 numbering, 59 bend-radius, 64 benefits, 17 best practices, 45 bidirectional operation, 62 blowers, 90 cooling enclosures, 69 physical specifications, 126 status displays, 90 UNRECOVERABLE conditions, 141 CRITICAL conditions, 140 failure, 141 missing, 141, 141 monitored functions, 73 NONCRITICAL conditions, 140, 141 replacement, 94 speed, 140 speed control signal, 69 status LEDs, 70 UNRECOVERABLE conditions, 141 blowers signals, 69 browser interface, 19, 40 BTU specifications, 127, 132

С

cables FCC compliance statement, 116 cabling controller, 103 CAC, 155, 158 cache battery assembly LED, 95 CAUTIONs overheating, 65 air flow, 68 disk drives, 65, 68 drive blank, 68 initializing the system, 101 overheating, 68 replacement time, disk drives, 65 **CAUTIONs** air flow, 65 disk drives, 65, 68 CDRH, compliance regulations, 117 Center for Devices and Radiological Health See CDRH certification product labels, 123 changing passwords, 102 checksum, 39 Class A equipment, Canadian compliance statement, 117 Class B equipment, Canadian compliance statement, 117 cleaning fiber optic connectors, 57, 164 clearing passwords, 103 clustering, 17 code flag, 155 Command View EVA defined, 19, 20 commercial environments, use in, 17 component description, 64 components, storage system, 19 condition report terminology, 85 condition reporting analysis, 88 backplane, 151 CRITICAL conditions, defined, 85 current sensors, 149 drive enclosures, 84 drives, 136 element types, 87, 135 EMU, 144 error code, 87 error queue, 86 hosts, 153 I/O modules, 151 INFORMATION conditions, defined, 86 NONCRITICAL conditions, defined, 86 power supplies, 138 terminology, 85 transceivers, 148 UNRECOVERABLE conditions, defined, 85 voltage sensor, 149 condition reporting temperature, 141 conditions, EMU detection of, 72 configuration physical layout, 23 configuration data, 50 connectors power IEC 309 receptacle, 105 power NEMA L6-30R, 105 protecting, 56, 163 content pane, 21

controller cabling, 103 connecting to, 31 connectors, 103 defined, 23, 25 initial setup, 37 status LEDs, 95, 103 controller pairs storage capacity, 18 controls, 71 cooling enclosures, 69 power supplies, 69 blowers, 68 Corrective Action Code See CAC Corrective Action Codes See CAC country-specific certifications, 123 coupled crash control codes, 158 CRITICAL conditions I/O modules communication, 152 audible alarm, 77 blowers speed, 140 defined, 85 drive link rate, 136, 137, 138 drives configuration, 136 EMU internal clock, 144 high current, 150 high temperature, 142 high voltage, 150 I/O modules unsupported, 152 low temperature, 143 low voltage, 150 transceivers, 149, 149 CRUs detecting presence, 90 replacing, 159 current sensing, 90 current sensors, 149

D

data center, use in, 17 DC power +5.1 VDC, 69 DC power specifications, 128 detail view, 157 detail view menu, 157 detecting CRU presence, 90 diagnostic information, 69 DIMMs, 94 disabling the audible alarm, 79 disk drives compatibility, 160 adding, 52 CAUTIONs about, 65, 68 connecting to backplane, 162 defined, 65 disconnecting from backplane, 161 displaying status, 90 hot swapping, 22 installing, 160 MTBF specifications, 127, 132 overcurrent sensors, 67 overheating, 65 power usage, 69 removing, 162 replacing, 65, 160, 162 reporting status, 66 spinning down, 162 supported, 65 disk drives affecting air flow, 68 display groups error code, Er, 76 audible alarm, Au, 76 enclosure number, En, 76 loop ID, Li, 76 reporting group, rG, 76 displaying errors, 72 displays audible alarm, 73, 77 blowers, 90 disk drives, 90 EMU status, 73, 90 enclosure status, 73 I/O modules, 90 drive blank CAUTIONs about, 68 removing, 162 drive enclosures defined, 23 front view, 59 reporting conditions, 84 drives detecting configuration error, 136 detecting drive link error, 137, 138 detecting link rate error, 136 missing, 137 monitoring functions, 73 reporting conditions, 136 dual controller, 61 Dual In-line Memory Modules See DIMMs dual-loop operation, 61 dump/restart control codes, 158 dust covers, using, 57, 64, 163 dynamic capacity expansion, 22

E

EIP, 156, 158 ejector button, disk drives, 162 element condition reporting, 84 element condition reporting;, 135 element conditions, 85 element manager GUI displaying events, 156 displaying termination events, 155 EMU controls, 71 alphanumeric display, 73 blower speed signal, 69 conditions, 144 CRITICAL conditions, 144 displaying status, 71, 90 INFORMATION conditions, 145, 147 locating, 24 NONCRITICAL conditions, 145, 146, 146 NONCRTICAL conditions, 146 resetting, 144 status icons, 73 UNRECOVERABLE conditions, 144, 146, 147 EMU LED displays, 73 EMU monitoring functions, 72 En description, 79 enabling the audible alarm, 78 enclosure address bus addressing configurations, 80 defined, 80 detecting errors with, 146 enclosure certification label, 124 enclosure conditions, 85 enclosure functions, 73 enclosure number description, 79 enclosure number display group, 76 Enclosure Services Interface See ESI Enclosure Services Interface See ESI Enclosure Services Processor See ESP enclosures cooling, 69 adjusting temperature, 69 bavs, 59 managing air flow, 69 monitoring internal temperature, 90 sensing temperature, 69, 90 Enterprise rack defined, 23 physical layout, 23 environmental specifications heat dissipation, 132 relative humidity, 132

environmental specifications air quality, 127, 132 altitude, 127 controllers, 130 Fibre Channel Loop Switches, 129 relative humidity, 127, 132 shipping, 132 short term storage, 132 EP, 72 error code selecting display group, 76 error codes, defined, 157 error condition report format, 87 error display, 87 error messages, 72 error queue, 86 error report storage, 87 errors displaying, 72 correcting automatically, 72 ESD protection, 159 ESI, 65, 72 EVA operations, 45 event code, defined, 158 event GUI display, 156 **Event Information Packet** See EIP **Event Information Packets** See EIP event number, 155

F

fabric connections, 31 failure, 151 fan redundancy, 24 FATA drives, using, 45 fault management details, 157 display, 96 displays, 156 fault tolerance, 22 FC loops, 31, 62 FC-AL drive enclosures, 70 FCC Class A Equipment, compliance notice, 115 Class B Equipment, compliance notice, 116 Declaration of Conformity, 116 modifications, 116 FCC Class A certification, 115 features defined, 17 VCS, 22 Federal Communications Commission (FCC) notice, 115 fiber optics cleaning cable connectors, 57, 164 protecting cable connectors, 56, 163 protecting components, 64

Fibre Channel Drive Enclosure defined, 23, 24 disk capacity, 24 Fibre Channel Loop Switches connecting to, 23 defined, 23, 24, 91 environmental specifications, 129 reading LEDs, 92 testing, 91 fibre channel switch specifications, 129 fibre optic cable assembly, 64 field-level hlp, 21 fier optics, 64 file name, error code definitions, 157 firmware version display, 97 functions monitoring, 72

Η

hardware components, 22 harmonics conformance Japan, 123 high availability HSV Controllers, 94 high current conditions, 150, 150 high density packaging, 18 high temperature conditions, 142, 142, 143 high voltage conditions, 150, 150 host bus adapters, 33 hot swap, 22 HP StorageWorks Business Copy License Instructions, 33 HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Catalog of Associated Documentation, 33 **HSV** Controllers power requirements, 129 connecting to, 31 defined, 23, 25 initial setup, 37 **HSV Element Manager** location of, 31 navigating interface, 20 HSV110 controller OCP shutting down the controller, 99 shutdown, 99

I/O modules bidirectional, 62 CRITICAL conditions, 152 displaying status, 90 monitored functions, 73 NONCRITICAL conditions, 152, 152, 153 I/O modules CRITICAL conditions, 152 element numbering, 152

icons battery status, 95 pushbuttons, 95 IDX code display, 156 INFORMATIÓN conditions, 86 audible alarm, 77 defined, 86 drive missing, 137 EMU, 145, 147 INITIALIZE LCD, 99 initializing the system defined, 99 installation software, 32 interface layout, software, 20 internal clock, 144

J

JBOD configurations, enclosure addressing, 80

Κ

kits, boxed, 33

L.

labels enclosure certification, 124 product certification, 123 laser device regulatory compliance notice, 116 lasers radiation, warning, 116 last fault information, 156 Last Termination Event Array See LTEA LCD default display, 96 LEDs battery status, 95 EMU displays, 73 pushbuttons, 77 Li display group, 76 license instructions, 33 Loop ID display group, 76 loop switches defined, 23 environmental specifications, 129 low temperature CRITICAL conditions, 143 NONCRITICAL conditions, 143 low voltage CRITICAL conditions, 150 NONCRITICAL conditions, 150 LTEA, 157 LUN numbers, 33

Μ

Management Appliance, 40 Management Appliance, Command View EVA, 31 missing AC input, 139 power supplies, 139, 139 Modular Array family, 17 monitored functions blowers, 73 I/O module, 73 power supply, 73 MTBF, 127, 132 multipathing, 17 multiple configurations, enclosure addressing, 80

Ν

navigating the error display, 87 navigation pane, 20 Network Storage Controller See NSC node WWN labels, 37 NONCRITICAL conditions, 86 audible alarm, 77 blowers missing, 141 EMU NVRAM write failure, 146 enclosure address, 146 backplane, 151 NVRAM conditions, 151 blowers speed, 140 defined, 86 EMU cannot read NVRAM data, 146 enclosure address, 146 NVRAM invalid read data, 145 high current, 150 high temperature, 142 high voltage, 150 IO modules, 152 low temperature, 143 low voltage, 150 **NVRAM**, 145 NVRAM read, 151 NVRAM write failure, 146 power supplies, 139 NONCRITICAL conditions NVRAM read failure, 151 not installed power supplies, 139 NSC, 157 NVRAM read failure, 153 NVRAM write failure, 146

Ο

OCP fault management displays, 156 firmware version, 98 using, 37 OCP pushbutton icons, 103 online help system, 20, 21 OpenView Storage Management Appliance, 20, 40 operating system kit, 33 overcurrent sensors backplane, 67 disk drives, 67 overheating CAUTIONs, 65 preventing, 65 CAUTIONs, 68 disk drives, 68 drive blank, 68

Ρ

page-level help, 20, 21 parameter code, 156 parameter code number, 156 password clearing, 103 entering, 102 changing, 102, 102 clearing, 102 entering, 39 removing, 102 PDUs, 105 performance, 17 physical configuration, 23 physical specifications blowers, 126 PIC, 97 port LEDs, 92 ports activating, 62 POST, 91 power connectors IEC 309 receptacle, 105 NEMA L6-30R, 105 POWER OFF LCD, 99 power PC processor, 98 power specifications AC, 128 DC, 128 drive enclosure, 127

power supplies, 69 NONCRITICAL conditions, 139 overload, 69 sensing temperature, 69 AC frequency, 69 AC input missing, 139 cooling, 69 DC outputs, 69 missing, 139, 139 not installed, 139 protection, 69 status LEDs, 70 thermal protection, 69 UNRECOVERABLE conditions, 145, 147 power supplies AC voltage, 69 monitored functions, 73 power supply redundancy, 24 Power-On Self Test See POST powering off the system, 100 defined, 99 preventing overheating, 65 product certification, 123 programmable integrated circuit See PIC protecting fiber optic connectors cleaning supplies, 57, 164 dust covers, 57, 163 how to clean, 57, 164 protecting, power supplies, 69 pushbuttons icons, 95, 103 definition, 95 EMU, 77 navigating with, 95 pushbuttons

Q

Quasar, 98

R

rack defined, 23, 27 environmental specifications, 132 physical layout, 23 power specifications, 132 rack configurations, 104 regulatory compliance notices cables, 116 Class A, 115 Class B, 116 European Union, 117 Japan, 123 laser devices, 116 modifications, 116 Taiwan, 123 WEEE recycling notices, 118

regulatory notices, 115 relative humidity drive enclosure, 127 short term storage, 127 drive enclosure, 127 operating, 132 shipping, 127, 132 short term storage, 132 release lever, disk drive, 162 removing disk drives, 162 replacement procedures common, 159 CRUs, 159 replacement time, disk drives , 65 replacing disk drives, 160, 162 resetting EMU, 144 RESTART LCD, 99 restarting the system, 99, 100 restarting the system defined, 99 rH displays, 88 rL displays, 88 room temperature See ambient temperature rpm, disk drives, 65

S

sensing current, 90 enclosure temperature, 90 power supply temperature, 69 total power, 90 voltage, 90 sensors overcurrent, 67 SES compliance, 70 session pane, 20 setting password, 39 SFP, 24, 93 shipping specifications, 132 relative humidity, 132 short circuit, 69 shutdown controllers, 99 shutdown failure, 147 shutdown system, 96 shutting down the system, 99 restarting, 100 shutting down the system : removing power; removing power, 100 signals, diagnostic, 69 slots See enclosures, bays small form-factor connectors, 64 Small Form-factor pluggable See SFP Snapclone benefits, 22 defined, 18

Snapshot benefits, 22 defined, 18 Snapshot feature, 33 Software Component ID Codes See SWCID Software Identification Code See SWCID software installation, 32 software version display, 97, 98 specifications disk drive, MTBF, 127, 132 heat dissipation, 127 power, 127 speed conditions, blower, 140, 140, 141 spin down, 162 status displays blowers, 90 EMU, 90 disk drives, 90 I/O modules, 90 power, 90 status LEDs blowers, 89 power supplies, 70 status, disk drives, 66 storage system restarting, 100 adding disk drives, 52 configuration data, 50 initializing, 101 powering off, 100 powerup, 49 shutdown, 49 shutting down, 99 storage system components, 19 storage system menu tree fault management, 96 system information, 96 Storage System Name, 95 storage system racks, defined;, 27 SWCID, 155, 156, 158 system information firmware version, 97 software version, 97 versions, 98 system information display, 96 system menu tree shut down system, 96 system password, 96 system password, 96 system rack configurations, 104

Т

TC, 158 TC display, 156 TC error code, 156 temperature condition reports, 141 effect of air flow, 69 sensing, 69, 90 Termination Code See TC termination event GUI display, 155 thermal protection, power supplies, 69 total power sensing, 90 transceivers CRITICAL conditions, 148, 149, 149 loop switches, 24 monitored functions, 73 turning off power, 99

U

Uninitializing, 101 unitializing the system, 101 universal disk drives, 65 UNRECOVERABLE conditions blowers no blowers installed, 141 audible alarm, 77 backplane NVRAM, 145 blowers failure, 141 EMU load failure, 146 communications interrupted, 144 hardware failure, 147 high temperature, 143 power supplies missing, 139 shutdown, 145 missing, 139 shutdown failure, 147 shutdown, 145

user interface, 19, 20 using the OCP, 37

V

VCS benefits, 22 defined, 19 features, 22 VCS version, 97 verifying operation, 70, 89 version information displaying, 97 software, 97 firmware, 98 OCP firmware, 98 software, 98 VCS, 98 version information: firmware, 97 virtual RAID, 17 See also vRAID virtualization, 18 voltage sensing, 90 voltage sensors, 149 Vraid, 18, 20 Vsnap, 18, 22

W

warnings lasers, radiation, 116 websites disk drives, 160 WEEE recycling notices, 118 WWN, backplane, 151 WWN, blank, 151